

Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES IN
LERATO PARK

VOLUME 1: CONTRACT DOCUMENT

August 2026

TENDER SUBMITTED BY:

Name of Company : _____

Address: _____

Telephone No: _____



WP Nr: 3850-11-15

Prepared for:

Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs
Private Bag X5005
Kimberley
8300

Tel: +27 (0) 53 830 9400

Beneficiary:

Sol Plaatje Municipality
Private Bag X5030
Kimberley



Prepared by:

Bigen Africa Services (Pty) Ltd
19 Schmidtdrift Road
Rhodesdene
Kimberley, 8301

Contact person: Marthinus Pretorius

Tel: +27 (0) 53 831 2935

Fax: +27 (0) 86 518 5094

Email: mathinus.pretorius@bigengroup.com



Closing Date 28 August 2026 at 11h00

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

CONTENTS LIST

DESCRIPTION **COLOUR**

VOLUME 1

SBD 1

LOCALITY PLAN

PORTION 1 TENDER

Part T1 Tendering procedures

Section T1.1	Tender notice and invitation to tender	White
Section T1.2	Tender data	Pink
Section T1.3	Standard conditions of tender	Pink

Part T2 Returnable documents **Yellow**

Section T2.1	List of returnable documents
Section T2.2	Returnable schedules

PORTION 2 CONTRACT

Part C1 Agreements and contract data **Yellow**

Section C1.1	Forms of offer and acceptance
--------------	-------------------------------

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------	---------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------

Section C1.2 Contract data

Part C2 Pricing Data

Yellow

Section C2.1 Pricing Instructions

Section C2.2 Bill of quantities

Section C2.3 Summary of schedules

Part C3 Scope of work

Blue

Section C3.1 Description of the Works

Section C3.2 Engineering

Section C3.3 Procurement

Section C3.4 Construction

Section C3.5 Management

Part C4 Site Information

Green

VOLUME 2: BOOK OF DRAWINGS

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SBD1

**PART A
INVITATION TO BID**

YOU ARE HEREBY INVITED TO BID FOR REQUIREMENTS OF THE (NAME OF DEPARTMENT/ PUBLIC ENTITY)					
BID NUMBER:	NC/17/2026	CLOSING DATE:	28 August 2026	CLOSING TIME:	11h00am
DESCRIPTION	The Construction of Twelve (12) Military Veteran Houses in Lerato Park				
THE SUCCESSFUL BIDDER WILL BE REQUIRED TO FILL IN AND SIGN A WRITTEN CONTRACT FORM (SBD7).					
BID RESPONSE DOCUMENTS MAY BE DEPOSITED IN THE BID BOX SITUATED AT (STREET ADDRESS)					
Larry Moleko Louw Building					
Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs					
9 Cecil Sussman Road					
Kimberley					
SUPPLIER INFORMATION					
NAME OF BIDDER					
POSTAL ADDRESS					
STREET ADDRESS					
TELEPHONE NUMBER	CODE		NUMBER		
CELLPHONE NUMBER					
FACSIMILE NUMBER	CODE		NUMBER		
E-MAIL ADDRESS					
VAT REGISTRATION NUMBER					
	TCS PIN:		OR	CSD No:	
B-BBEE STATUS LEVEL VERIFICATION CERTIFICATE [TICK APPLICABLE BOX]	☐ Yes		B-BBEE STATUS LEVEL SWORN AFFIDAVIT	☐ Yes	
	☐ No			☐ No	
IF YES, WHO WAS THE CERTIFICATE ISSUED BY?					
AN ACCOUNTING OFFICER AS CONTEMPLATED IN THE CLOSE CORPORATION ACT (CCA) AND NAME THE APPLICABLE IN THE TICK BOX	☐	AN ACCOUNTING OFFICER AS CONTEMPLATED IN THE CLOSE CORPORATION ACT (CCA)			
	☐	A VERIFICATION AGENCY ACCREDITED BY THE SOUTH AFRICAN ACCREDITATION SYSTEM (SANAS)			
	☐	A REGISTERED AUDITOR			
		NAME:			
[A B-BBEE STATUS LEVEL VERIFICATION CERTIFICATE/SWORN AFFIDAVIT (FOR EMEs & QSEs) MUST BE SUBMITTED IN ORDER TO QUALIFY FOR PREFERENCE POINTS FOR B-BBEE]					
ARE YOU THE ACCREDITED REPRESENTATIVE IN SOUTH AFRICA FOR THE GOODS /SERVICES /WORKS OFFERED?	☐ Yes ☐ No	ARE YOU A FOREIGN BASED SUPPLIER FOR THE GOODS /SERVICES /WORKS OFFERED?	☐ Yes ☐ No		
	[IF YES ENCLOSE PROOF]		[IF YES ANSWER PART B:3 BELOW]		
SIGNATURE OF BIDDER			DATE		
CAPACITY UNDER WHICH THIS BID IS SIGNED (Attach proof of authority to sign this bid; e.g. resolution of directors, etc.)					
TOTAL NUMBER OF ITEMS OFFERED			TOTAL BID PRICE (ALL INCLUSIVE)		
BIDDING PROCEDURE ENQUIRIES MAY BE DIRECTED TO:		TECHNICAL INFORMATION MAY BE DIRECTED TO:			
DEPARTMENT/ PUBLIC ENTITY			CONTACT PERSON	MW Pretorius	
CONTACT PERSON			TELEPHONE NUMBER	0825573964	
TELEPHONE NUMBER			FACSIMILE NUMBER		
FACSIMILE NUMBER			E-MAIL ADDRESS		
E-MAIL ADDRESS			marthinus.pretorius@bigengroup.com		

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PART B TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR BIDDING

1. BID SUBMISSION:

- 1.1. BIDS MUST BE DELIVERED BY THE STIPULATED TIME TO THE CORRECT ADDRESS. LATE BIDS WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED FOR CONSIDERATION.
- 1.2. ALL BIDS MUST BE SUBMITTED ON THE OFFICIAL FORMS PROVIDED-(NOT TO BE RE-TYPED) OR ONLINE
- 1.3. BIDDERS MUST REGISTER ON THE CENTRAL SUPPLIER DATABASE (CSD) TO UPLOAD MANDATORY INFORMATION NAMELY: (BUSINESS REGISTRATION/ DIRECTORSHIP/ MEMBERSHIP/IDENTITY NUMBERS; TAX COMPLIANCE STATUS; AND BANKING INFORMATION FOR VERIFICATION PURPOSES). B-BBEE CERTIFICATE OR SWORN AFFIDAVIT FOR B-BBEE MUST BE SUBMITTED TO BIDDING INSTITUTION.
- 1.4. WHERE A BIDDER IS NOT REGISTERED ON THE CSD, MANDATORY INFORMATION NAMELY: (BUSINESS REGISTRATION/ DIRECTORSHIP/ MEMBERSHIP/IDENTITY NUMBERS; TAX COMPLIANCE STATUS MAY NOT BE SUBMITTED WITH THE BID DOCUMENTATION. B-BBEE CERTIFICATE OR SWORN AFFIDAVIT FOR B-BBEE MUST BE SUBMITTED TO BIDDING INSTITUTION.
- 1.5. THIS BID IS SUBJECT TO THE PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT POLICY FRAMEWORK ACT 2000 AND THE PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT REGULATIONS, 2022, THE GENERAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT (GCC) AND, IF APPLICABLE, ANY OTHER LEGISLATION OR SPECIAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT.

2. TAX COMPLIANCE REQUIREMENTS

- 2.1 BIDDERS MUST ENSURE COMPLIANCE WITH THEIR TAX OBLIGATIONS.
- 2.2 BIDDERS ARE REQUIRED TO SUBMIT THEIR UNIQUE PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (PIN) ISSUED BY SARS TO ENABLE THE ORGAN OF STATE TO VIEW THE TAXPAYER'S PROFILE AND TAX STATUS.
- 2.3 APPLICATION FOR TAX COMPLIANCE STATUS (TCS) OR PIN MAY ALSO BE MADE VIA E-FILING. IN ORDER TO USE THIS PROVISION, TAXPAYERS WILL NEED TO REGISTER WITH SARS AS E-FILERS THROUGH THE WEBSITE WWW.SARS.GOV.ZA.
- 2.4 BIDDERS MAY ALSO SUBMIT A PRINTED TCS TOGETHER WITH THE BID.
- 2.5 IN BIDS WHERE CONSORTIA / JOINT VENTURES / SUB-CONTRACTORS ARE INVOLVED, EACH PARTY MUST SUBMIT A SEPARATE PROOF OF TCS / PIN / CSD NUMBER.
- 2.6 WHERE NO TCS IS AVAILABLE BUT THE BIDDER IS REGISTERED ON THE CENTRAL SUPPLIER DATABASE (CSD), A CSD NUMBER MUST BE PROVIDED.

3. QUESTIONNAIRE TO BIDDING FOREIGN SUPPLIERS

- 3.1. IS THE BIDDER A RESIDENT OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA (RSA)? ☐ YES ☐ NO
- 3.2. DOES THE BIDDER HAVE A BRANCH IN THE RSA? ☐ YES ☐ NO
- 3.3. DOES THE BIDDER HAVE A PERMANENT ESTABLISHMENT IN THE RSA? ☐ YES ☐ NO
- 3.4. DOES THE BIDDER HAVE ANY SOURCE OF INCOME IN THE RSA? ☐ YES ☐ NO

IF THE ANSWER IS "NO" TO ALL OF THE ABOVE, THEN, IT IS NOT A REQUIREMENT TO OBTAIN A TAX COMPLIANCE STATUS / TAX COMPLIANCE SYSTEM PIN CODE FROM THE SOUTH AFRICAN REVENUE SERVICE (SARS) AND IF NOT REGISTER AS PER 2.3 ABOVE.

NB: FAILURE TO PROVIDE ANY OF THE ABOVE PARTICULARS MAY RENDER THE BID INVALID.

END OF SECTION

Contractor

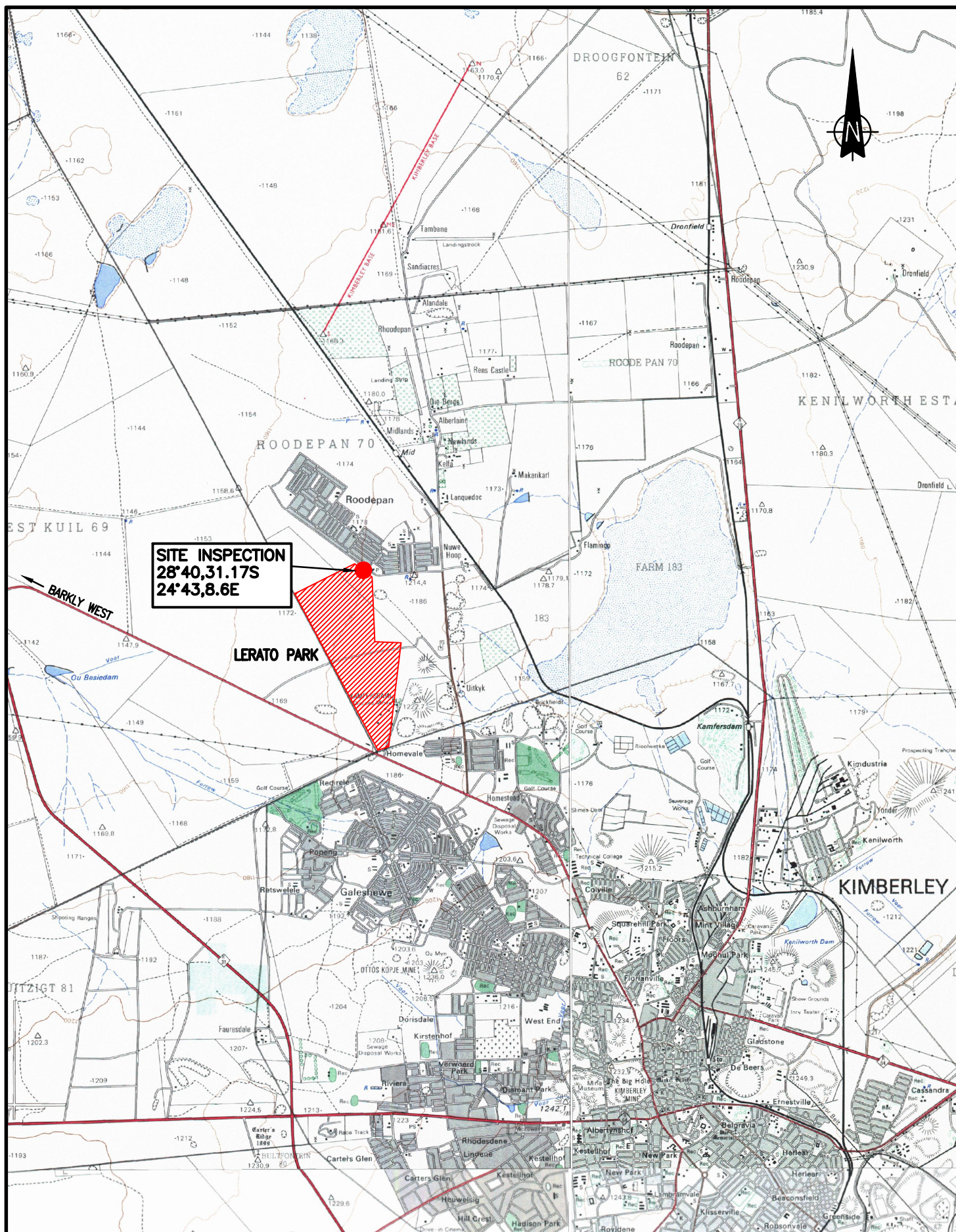
Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2



bigen
Doing good while
doing business

Allan Cormack Street
The Innovation Hub Persequor Pretoria
PO Box 29 The Innovation Hub Pretoria 0087
Tel: +27 (0) 12 842 8700
Fax: +27 (0) 12 843 9000/9001
E-mail: pretoria@bigengroup.com
www.bigengroup.com

PROJECT:

LERATO PARK

DWG TITLE:

LOCALITY PLAN

DRAWN:
N Bester

CHECKED:
L Gertenbach

APPROVED:
L Gertenbach

SCALE:

DATE:
October 2019

DWG No:
1396.10.ZA.01.A011

VER:
1.0

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 1: TENDER

Part T1 Tendering Procedures

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

TENDERING PROCEDURES

CONTENTS LIST

Section	Description	Page No
SECTION T1.1	TENDER NOTICE AND INVITATION TO TENDER.....	T1.2
SECTION T1.2	TENDER DATA	T1.3
SECTION T1.3	STANDARD CONDITIONS OF TENDER	T1.19

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

T1.1

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 1: TENDER

Section T1.1

Tender Notice and Invitation to Tender

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

TENDER NOTICE AND INVITATION TO TENDER

1. Tenders are invited for the construction of twelve (12) military veteran houses in Lerato Park.
2. It is estimated that tenderers should have a CIDB contractor grading of **4GB** or higher.
3. Tender documents will be made available electronically from **4 August 2026** by the Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs on e-tenders portal (www.etenders.gov.za).
5. Tenders close on **28 August 2026 at 11h00**. Particulars regarding the submission of tenders appear in Part T1.2 of Volume 1 of the tender documents.
6. A compulsory site visit and clarification meeting will be held on **13 August 2026 and will commence promptly at 11h00. No late comers will be accommodated.** Tenderers are requested to meet the Engineer at the Lerato Park Site office (Latitude: 28°40'31.63"S and Longitude: 24°43'8.00"E) as shown on the Locality Plan at the front of the tender document.
7. Enquiries relating to this tender should be addressed to Mr. MW Pretorius at the Kimberley Office of BIGEN AFRICA Services (Pty) Ltd.
8. Tender will be evaluated on an 80/20 principal evaluation criteria.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Additional Requirements:

- Documents to be submitted with the tender document: an Original valid Tax Clearance Certificate or certified copy, inclusive of verification pin, valid CIDB registration certificate, valid NHBRC registration certificate, copy of CSD registration report, certified Audited financial statements for the last three years.
- With reference to Section T2.1 of the document the following returnable documents are required:
 - Copy of Certificate of Contractor Registration with the CIDB,
 - Original valid Tax Clearance Certificate, or a recent CSD report clearly stipulating the tax status, or a unique security personal identification number (PIN) issued by the SA Revenue Services (in terms of the Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2022 Government Gazette No. 2721. Tenderers shall be registered and in good standing with the South African Revenue Service (SARS) on CSD, if noncompliant, the tenderer must submit evidence from SARS informing the department of why it is none complaint and when is the estimated resolution,
 - Certified copy of VAT Registration Certificate (if VAT number is not included in tax clearance certificate),
 - Certified copy of Letter of Good Standing issued by the Department of Labour in terms of Act 130 of 1993,
 - Certified copy of Unemployment Insurance Fund Certificate of Compliance in terms of Act 4 of 2002,
 - Certified copy of Certificate of Incorporation (if tenderer is a Company),
 - Certified copy of Founding Statement (if tenderer is a Closed Corporation),
 - Certified copy of Partnership Agreement (if tenderer is a Partnership),
 - Certified copy of Identity Document (if tenderer is a One-man concern),
 - Joint Venture Agreement (if tenderer is a Joint Venture),
 - Curriculum vitae of the person who prepares the Contractor's Health and Safety Plan, and
 - Curriculum vitae of the Health and Safety Officer the successful tenderer intends appointing in accordance with the Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993).
 - Curriculum Vitae of all supervisory staff,
 - B-BBEE Verification Certificate,
 - CSD Report,
 - Copy of NHBRC registration certificate,
 - Copy of Municipal Accounts (Rates, Taxes and services), and
 - Bank rating (not older than 30days).

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- Preference will be given to construction companies who are owned by women, youth or persons with disability
- The requirements of the Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2022 (Government Gazette No. 2721) shall also apply, together with all other requirements as set out in the Tender Data
- No Faxed, emailed and/or scanned id proposals will be considered.
- COGHSTA reserves the right to withdraw any invitation to tender and/or re-advertise or to reject any tender or to accept a part of it. COGHSTA does not bind itself to accepting the lowest tender or to award a contract to the bidder scoring the highest number of points.
- COGHSTA reserves the right not to bind itself to accepting the lowest tender or to award a contract to the bidder scoring the highest number of points in the case where the contractor has current commitments (appointments) with the Department and other entities based on a risk assessment. **(Tenderers are requested to complete Section T2.2.3 Present (current) commitments in full, with appointment letters as support).**
- Functionality will be applied during the bidding process. Based on functionality, the tenderer should score 70% or more on the following criteria to be further evaluated.
- Functionality criteria: experience of tenderer, project staff experience, plant and equipment and bank rating.
- Tenders will be opened directly after closing. Tender Prices will not be read
- Only CSD registered service provider may bid
- Failure by bidders to comply with the minimum specification will result in automatic disqualification of the bidder

END OF SECTION

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 1: TENDER

Section T1.2 Tender Data

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

TENDER DATA

The conditions of tender are the Standard Conditions of Tender as contained in Annex F of the Construction Industry Development Board's Board Notice 136 of 2015 (contained in Government Gazette No. 38960 of 10 July 2015), bound into section T1.3.

The Standard Conditions of Tender makes several references to the Tender Data. The Tender Data also contains project specific amendments to the Standard Conditions of Tender applicable to this document. The Tender Data shall have precedence in the interpretation of any ambiguity or inconsistency between it and the Standard Conditions of Tender.

Each item of data given below is cross referenced to the clause in the Standard Conditions of Tender to which it mainly applies.

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
1.1	The Employer is the Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs
1.2	The tender documents issued by the Employer comprise two volumes. Volume 1: Contract Document contains the parts and sections (contained in each part) as listed in the Contents List of Volume 1 bound in the front of this document. Volume 2: Book of Drawings contains the drawings and bounded in at the back of Volume 1.
1.3.2	Replace this sub-clause with the following: These Conditions of Tender, the Tender Data, List of Returnable Documents and

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
	Returnable Schedules which are required for tender evaluation purposes, shall form part of the Contract arising from the invitation to tender.
1.4	The Employer's Agent is (also known as the Engineer): Bigen Africa Services (Pty) Ltd 19 Schmidtdrift Road Rhodesdene Kimberley, 8301 PO Box 110092 Kimberley 8306 Tel: +27 (0) 53 831 2935 Fax: +27 (0) 86 518 5094 e-mail: Marthinus.pretorius@bigengroup.com Attention: Mr MW Pretorius
2.1	Only those tenderers who are registered with the CIDB at the time of closing of tenders, in a contractor grading designation equal to or higher than a contractor grading designation determined in accordance with the sum tendered for a 4GB class of construction work, are eligible to have their tenders evaluated. Joint ventures are eligible to submit tenders provided that: - every member of the joint venture is registered with the CIDB; - the lead partner has a contractor grading designation in the 4GB class of construction work; - the combined contractor grading designation calculated in accordance with the Construction Industry Development Regulations is equal to or higher than a contractor grading designation determined in accordance with the sum tendered for a 4GB class of construction work; and - the JV must submit a joint CSD Report and separate SBD forms.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
2.2.1	Add the following to sub-clause 2.2.1: Accept that the Employer will not compensate the tenderer for any costs incurred in attending interviews in the office of the employer or the employer's agent (if required).
2.7	A compulsory clarification meeting and site visit will be held as follows: Location : Lerato Park Site office (Location indicated on Locality Plan) Date : NC/17/2026 Time : 11h00am (meeting will commence promptly at 11h00) Confirmation of attendance will be recorded, on site, in the Site Inspection Certificate included in Section T2.2 of the Document. Tender documents will not be made available at the site visit or clarification meeting. Detail relating to the collection of tender documents is indicated in the Tender Notice and Invitation to Tender (Section T1.1 of the document)
2.10	Add the following sub-clause 2.10.5: A digital copy of the Bill of Quantities can be obtained from MW Pretorius at the office of the Engineer upon sufficient notice.
2.10.2	This project is VAT Exempt (This Client will not Pay VAT on the Project)
2.11	Replace the last sentence of the clause with the following: To correct errors made, draw a line through the incorrect entry and write the correct entry above in black ink and place the full signatures of the authorised signatories next to the correct entry.
2.12.1	Add the following to the clause: All alternative tender offers shall be referred to in Section T2.2.1 – Alterations to Tender.
2.12.2	Add the following to the clause: Should the Tenderer wish to offer alternative designs and/or construction materials, he shall include with this Tender full details thereof, including a complete bill of

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
	quantities, formal design calculations, and full details of all alternative components proposed to be included in the Works. Refer also to the Contract Data in this regard. Failure to properly comply with this clause, thereby preventing the Employer and/or the Engineer to properly assess the full implications of the alternative tender, is likely to disqualify the alternative offered from further consideration. No submission by the Contractor after award for additional payment or time for completion of Works relating to the alternative offer will be considered, the tendered rates submitted shall be considered to reflect the full and final cost implications of the alternative offer.
2.13.2	Replace the contents of the clause with the following: Return all volumes of the tender document to the Employer after completion of the relevant sections of each volume in their entirety, in hard copy by writing in black ink and one soft copy, preferably on a memory stick. All volumes are to be left intact in its original format and no pages shall be removed or re-arranged.
2.13.3	No copies of the tender offer are required.
2.13.4	Add the following to the clause: Only authorised signatories may sign the original and all copies of the tender offer where required in terms of 2.13.3.
2.13.5	The Employer's address for delivery of tender offers and identification details to be shown on each tender offer package are: Tender box location : Larry Moleko Louw Building Physical address : Department of Cooperative Governance Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs 9 Cecil Sussman Road, Kimberley Identification details : Tender Number: NC/17/2026 – The Construction of Twelve (12) Military Veteran Houses In Lerato Park

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
	Please note that the original tender document with a soft copy on a memory stick must be placed in a sealed envelope. The name and address of the tender shall be entered on the back of the envelope.
2.13.6	A two-envelope procedure will not be followed, but a two-stage tender process will be followed.
2.13.10	Add the following sub- clause 2.13.10: Accept that all conditions, which are printed or written upon any stationary used by the Tenderer for the purpose of or in connection with the submission of a tender offer for this Contract, which are in conflict with the conditions laid down in this document shall be waived, renounced and abandoned.
2.14	Add the following to the clause: The Tenderer is required to enter information in the following sections of the document: Section T2.2 : Returnable Schedules Section C1.1 : Form of Offer and Acceptance Section C1.2 : Contract Data (Part 2) Section C2.2 : Bill of Quantities The above sections shall be signed by the Tenderer (and witnesses where required). Individual pages should only be initialled by the successful Tenderer and by the witnesses after acceptance by the Employer of the Tender Offer. The Tenderer shall complete and sign the Form of Offer prior to the submission of a Tender Offer. Failure to fill in the Form of Offer will result in rejection of that specific tender since no valid offer was made to the client for the execution of the works. The Schedule of Deviations (if applicable) shall be signed by the successful Tenderer after acceptance by the Employer of the Tender Offer.

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
	Accept that failure on the part of the Tenderer to submit any one of the Returnable Documents listed in clause 2.23 within the period stipulated, shall be just cause for the Employer to consider the tender offer as being regarded as non-responsive. Accept that the Employer shall in the evaluation of tender offers take due account of the Tenderer's past performance in the execution of similar engineering works of comparable magnitude, and the degree to which he possesses the necessary technical, financial and other resources to enable him to complete the Works successfully within the contract period. Satisfy the Employer and the Engineer as to his ability to perform and complete the Works timeously, safely and with satisfactory quality, and furnish details in section T2.2.2 of contracts of a similar nature and magnitude which they have successfully executed in the past. Accept that the Employer is restricted in accordance with clause 5 (1) of the Construction Regulations, 2014, to only appoint a contractor whom he is satisfied has the necessary competencies and resources to carry out the work safely. Accept that submitting inferior and inadequate information relating to health and safety (as required in clause 2.23) shall be regarded as justifiable and compelling reasons not to accept the Tender Offer of the Tenderer scoring the highest number of tender evaluation points.
2.15.1	The closing time and location for the submission of tender offers are: Time : 11h00 am on 28 August 2026 Tender box location : Larry Moleko Louw Building Physical address : Department of Cooperative Governance Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs 9 Cecil Sussman Road, Kimberley
2.16.1	The tender offer validity period is 90 days.
2.16.1	Add the following to the clause: If the tender validity expires on a Saturday, Sunday or public holiday, the tender shall remain valid and open for acceptance until the closure of business on the following working day.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
2.16.5	Add the following new clause: Accept that should the Tenderer unilaterally withdraw his tender during the tender validity period, the Employer shall, without prejudice to any other rights he may have, be entitled to accept any less favourable tender for the Works from those received, or to call for fresh tenders, or to otherwise arrange for execution of the Works, and the Tenderer shall pay on demand any additional expense incurred by the Employer on account of the adoption of the said courses, as well as either the difference in cost between the tender withdrawn (as corrected in terms of clause 3.9 of the Conditions of Tender) and any less favourable tender accepted by the Employer, or the difference between the tender withdrawn (as corrected) and the cost of execution of the Works by the Employer as well as any other amounts the Employer may have to pay to have the Works completed.
2.18.1	Add the following to the clause: Accept that if requested, the Tenderer shall within 7 days of the date upon which he is requested to do so, submit a full report from his banker as to his financial standing. The Employer may, in its discretion, and subject to the provisions of Section 4(1)(d) of the State Tender Board Act 86 of 1968, condone any failure to comply with the foregoing condition. Accept that the Employer or his agent, reserves the right to approach the Tenderer's banker or guarantor(s) as indicated in the tender document, or the bankers of each of the individual members of any joint venture that is constituted for purposes of this Contract, with a view to ascertaining whether the required guarantee will be furnished, and for purposes of ascertaining the financial strength of the Tenderer or of the individual member of such venture.
2.22	Return all retained tender documents prior to the closing time for the submission of Tender Offers.
2.23	The following certificates / information are to be provided with the tender offer or within three days of receipt of the Employer's or his Agent's written request to submit same: a. CIDB registration certificate in the grading designation stipulated in clause 2.1 above,

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
	b. Original valid Tax Clearance Certificate, or a recent CSD report clearly stipulating the tax status, or a unique security personal identification number (PIN) issued by the SA Revenue Services (in terms of the Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2022 Government Gazette No. 2721. Tenderers shall be registered and in good standing with the South African Revenue Service (SARS) on CSD, if noncompliant, the tenderer must submit evidence from SARS informing the department of why it is none complaint and when is the estimated resolution, c. Certified copy of VAT Registration Certificate (if VAT number is not included in tax clearance certificate) or a recent CSD report detailing the tax status, d. Certified copy of Letter of Good Standing issued by the Department of Labour in terms of Act 130 of 1993, e. Certified copy of Unemployment Insurance Fund Certificate of Compliance in terms of Act 4 of 2002, f. Certified copy of Certificate of Incorporation (if tenderer is a Company), g. Certified copy of Founding Statement (if tenderer is a Closed Corporation), h. Certified copy of Partnership Agreement (if tenderer is a Partnership), i. Certified copy of Identity Document (if tenderer is a One-man concern), j. Joint Venture Agreement (if tenderer is a Joint Venture), k. Curriculum vitae of the person who prepares the Contractor's Health and Safety Plan, and l. Curriculum vitae of the Health and Safety Officer the successful tenderer intends appointing in accordance with the Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993) m. Curriculum Vitae of all supervisory staff n. B-BBEE verification Certificate o. CSD report p. Copy of NHBRC registration certificate, and

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender																												
	q. Copy of Municipal Account (Rates, taxes and services) r. Bank Rating PRE-EVALUATION CRITERIA Compliance with administrative requirements as stated in Clause 2.23 above. In this evaluation stage, all bidders that fail to provide the required information and documentation will be disqualified from further evaluation: <table> <tr> <th>Returnable</th><th>Disqualifying Factor</th></tr> <tr> <td>Is the bidder tax compliant</td><td>No</td></tr> <tr> <td>BBBEE certificate or Original Sworn Affidavit</td><td>No</td></tr> <tr> <td>Is the bidder registered on the National Treasury Central Supplier Database (CSD)</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>Copy of company registration documents</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>Detailed Company Profile</td><td>No</td></tr> <tr> <td>NHBRC certificate and CIDB grading</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>CV's and certified copies of qualifications and professional registration certificates of the project team personnel involved on the project</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>CV and certified copies of certificate and professional registration for a Competent Person as defined in the Construction Regulations, 2003 and 2014 of the occupational Health and Safety Act (act 85 of 1993).</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>List of similar work carried out previously.</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>Present (current) commitments in full, with appointment letters as support (Employer, Reference and contact details and Status of project)</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>Certified identity documents of company directors or shareholders</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>The following documentation for Joint Ventures: - Signed copy of the JV agreement - Joint CSD Report - Separate SBD 4 form for each JV partner </td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>Authority to sign on behalf of bidder</td><td>Yes</td></tr> </table>	Returnable	Disqualifying Factor	Is the bidder tax compliant	No	BBBEE certificate or Original Sworn Affidavit	No	Is the bidder registered on the National Treasury Central Supplier Database (CSD)	Yes	Copy of company registration documents	Yes	Detailed Company Profile	No	NHBRC certificate and CIDB grading	Yes	CV's and certified copies of qualifications and professional registration certificates of the project team personnel involved on the project	Yes	CV and certified copies of certificate and professional registration for a Competent Person as defined in the Construction Regulations, 2003 and 2014 of the occupational Health and Safety Act (act 85 of 1993).	Yes	List of similar work carried out previously.	Yes	Present (current) commitments in full, with appointment letters as support (Employer, Reference and contact details and Status of project)	Yes	Certified identity documents of company directors or shareholders	Yes	The following documentation for Joint Ventures: - Signed copy of the JV agreement - Joint CSD Report - Separate SBD 4 form for each JV partner	Yes	Authority to sign on behalf of bidder	Yes
Returnable	Disqualifying Factor																												
Is the bidder tax compliant	No																												
BBBEE certificate or Original Sworn Affidavit	No																												
Is the bidder registered on the National Treasury Central Supplier Database (CSD)	Yes																												
Copy of company registration documents	Yes																												
Detailed Company Profile	No																												
NHBRC certificate and CIDB grading	Yes																												
CV's and certified copies of qualifications and professional registration certificates of the project team personnel involved on the project	Yes																												
CV and certified copies of certificate and professional registration for a Competent Person as defined in the Construction Regulations, 2003 and 2014 of the occupational Health and Safety Act (act 85 of 1993).	Yes																												
List of similar work carried out previously.	Yes																												
Present (current) commitments in full, with appointment letters as support (Employer, Reference and contact details and Status of project)	Yes																												
Certified identity documents of company directors or shareholders	Yes																												
The following documentation for Joint Ventures: - Signed copy of the JV agreement - Joint CSD Report - Separate SBD 4 form for each JV partner	Yes																												
Authority to sign on behalf of bidder	Yes																												

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender	
	Project programme and methodology	No
	SBD forms must be completed and signed: SBD 1 SBD 2 SBD 4 (incomplete and/or in correct declaration) SBD 6.1 SBD 7.1	Yes
	The following non-compliance criteria will be applicable to Tenderers: - Contractors who previously failed to complete COGHSTA projects in the last 5 years - Previously Terminated contractors on COGHSTA projects within the last 5 years - Contractors previously withdrew from projects within the last 5 years - Non- attendance of compulsory briefing meeting	Yes
3.4	Tenders will not be opened immediately after the closing time for tenders.	
3.5	A two-envelope procedure will not be followed but a two-stage tender process will be followed.	
3.8.1	Add the following to the clause: d. The tender is not in compliance with the required returnable documents. e. The tender is not tax compliant. f. The tender has failed to clarify or submit any supporting documentation within the time for submission stated in the employers written request. g. The tenderer is not registered on the Central suppliers Database (CSD). Failure on the part of the Tenderer to submit a tender offer as stipulated in clause 2.13 prior to the closing time as stipulated in clause 2.15 shall be just cause for the Employer to consider the tender offer as being non-responsive Failure on the part of the Tenderer to submit any one of the returnable documents or certificates listed in clause 2.23 within the period stipulated shall be just cause for the Employer to consider the tender offer as being non-responsive.	

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
3.9	Replace the contents of the clause with the following: Check responsive tender offers for arithmetical errors, correcting them in the following manner: a) Where there is a discrepancy between the amounts in words and amounts in figures, the amount in words shall govern. b) If bills of quantities or pricing schedules apply and there is an error in the line item total resulting from the product of the unit rate and the quantity, the line item total shall govern and the rate shall be corrected. Where there is an obviously gross misplacement of the decimal point in the unit rate, the line item total as quoted shall govern, and the unit rate shall be corrected. c) Where there is an error in the total of the prices either as a result of other corrections required by this checking process or in the tenderer's addition of prices, the total of the prices (form of offer) shall govern and the tenderer will be asked to revise selected item prices (and their rates if bills of quantities apply) to achieve the tendered total of the prices. Consider the rejection of a tender offer if the tenderer does not correct or accept the correction of the arithmetical error in the manner described above.
3.11.1	Method 2 (as described in Clause 3.11.3 of the Standard Conditions of Tender) will be used to evaluate all responsive tender offers, where the Points scored for Price and specific goals are: in accordance with Clause 3.11.4 where the financial value inclusive of VAT of one or more responsive tender offers equals or is less than R50 000 000; or in accordance with Clause 3.11.5 where the financial value inclusive of VAT of all responsive tenders received have a value in excess of R50 000 000.
3.11.2	Delete Clause 3.11.2 and replace with: Method 1: Price and Specific Goals In the case of a price and specific goals:

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender																		
	1.) Score tender evaluation points for price 2.) Score points for specific goals 3.) Add the points scored for price and specific goals.																		
3.11.3	Functionality A two-stage tender procedure will be followed. The tenderers shall first be evaluated on the following functionality requirements: Add the following to F.3.11.3: Functionality will be scored and a minimum of 70 out of the possible 100 is required to be evaluated any further. Table F3.11.3.1 Functionality Evaluation Criteria <table><tr><th>Functionality</th><th>Criteria</th><th>Weight</th></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Experience of Tender on similar projects</td><td>40</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>Key personnel proposed for the project: Qualifications and experience of similar project</td><td>30</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>Plant and equipment</td><td>18</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>Bank rating</td><td>12</td></tr><tr><td colspan="2">Total</td><td>100</td></tr></table> 1. Experience of Tender on similar projects (Soring a maximum of 40%) 40% - Completion of at least 5 projects of similar scope, with a minimum value of R900 000.00 or above in the last 5 years, supported by contactable references and completion certificated 30% - Completion of at least 3 projects of similar scope, with a	Functionality	Criteria	Weight	1	Experience of Tender on similar projects	40	2	Key personnel proposed for the project: Qualifications and experience of similar project	30	3	Plant and equipment	18	4	Bank rating	12	Total		100
Functionality	Criteria	Weight																	
1	Experience of Tender on similar projects	40																	
2	Key personnel proposed for the project: Qualifications and experience of similar project	30																	
3	Plant and equipment	18																	
4	Bank rating	12																	
Total		100																	

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
	minimum value of R900 000.00 or above in the last 5 years, supported by contactable references and completion certificated 20% - Completion of at least 2 projects of similar scope, with a minimum value of R900 000.00 or above in the last 5 years, supported by contactable references and completion certificated 10% - Completion of at least 1 project of similar scope, with a minimum value of R900 000.00 or above in the last 5 years, supported by contactable references and completion certificated 2. Key personnel proposed for the project: Qualifications and experience of similar project (Scoring a maximum of 30%) Qualification and Competencies: • CV's and Qualifications of relevant individuals to the project e.g. Project Manager & Site Manager must be submitted. • An Original Sworn Affidavit by the employee confirming that the employee is employed by the tendering entity or have a MOU with the tendering entity must be attached to be evaluated and scored. Failure to provide affidavit will lead to personnel not being evaluated for qualification and experience. • In light of the above, experience is vital thus relevant individuals must possess the relevant experience. • Include proof of qualification certificated. • Include any Professional Registration that will be relevant to the project

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
	• 10% - Contracts manager: • 10% for minimum 5 years' experience as a contracts manager or a Site Agent (or a combination of the two), with supporting documentation and must be in possession of a National Diploma in Civil Engineering or similar appropriate Build Environment National Diploma. • 6% for minimum 3 years' experience as a contracts manager or a Site Agent (or a combination of the two), with supporting documentation and must be in possession of a National Diploma in Civil Engineering or similar appropriate Build Environment National Diploma. • 4% for minimum 2 years' experience as a contracts manager or a Site Agent (or a combination of the two), with supporting documentation and must be in possession of a National Diploma in Civil Engineering or similar appropriate Build Environment National Diploma. 10% - Site Agent: • 10% for minimum 5 years' experience as a Site Agent in construction of civil services for township developments, with supporting documentation and must be in possession of a National Diploma in Civil Engineering. • 6% for minimum 3 years' experience as a Site Agent in construction of civil services for township developments, with supporting documentation and must be in possession of a National Diploma in Civil Engineering or similar appropriate Build Environment National Diploma. • 4% for minimum 2 years' experience as a Site Agent in construction of civil services for township developments, with supporting documentation and must be in possession of a National Diploma in Civil Engineering or similar appropriate

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
	Build Environment National Diploma. 5% - Foreman: • 5% for minimum 5 years' experience as a foreman in construction of building works, with supporting documentation and must be in possession of a NQF level 4 certificate relating to building works. • 3% for minimum 3 years' experience as a foreman in construction of building works, with supporting documentation and must be in possession of a NQF level 4 certificate relating to building works. • 2% for minimum 2 years' experience as a foreman in construction of building works, with supporting documentation and must be in possession of a NQF level 4 certificate relating to building works. 5% - Health and Safety Officer: • 5% for minimum 5 years' experience after obtaining SACPMP Certificate as a registered Professional Safety Officer, proof of SACPMP certificate must be attached. • 3% for minimum 3 years' experience after obtaining SACPMP Certificate as a registered Professional Safety Officer, proof of SACPMP certificate must be attached. • 2% for minimum 2 years' experience after obtaining SACPMP Certificate as a registered Professional Safety Officer, proof of SACPMP certificate must be attached. 3. Plant and Equipment (Scoring a maximum of 18%) • Proof of ownership should be in the form of plant and equipment registration

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender																																			
	papers. • For Hiring/Leasing proof of leasing/hiring and form of agreement would be acceptable, specify plant if hiring e.g. TLB, plate compactor, rammer compactor, tipper truck, Light Duty Vehicle, jack hummer, wheelbarrow, poker vibrator, generator etc. • Plant to be specific to the project and proof to be attached, Equipment to be specific to the project and relevant to scope of work. • If NO proof of ownership is provided no points will be allocated. • If NO proof of hiring/leasing is not provided no points will be allocated. Points will be allocated as follows: <table><tr><th rowspan="2">Description of Equipment</th><th colspan="3">Allocation of Points</th></tr><tr><th>Ownership</th><th>Hire</th><th>No proof</th></tr><tr><td>TLB/Excavator</td><td>3</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Tipper truck (minimum 10m³)</td><td>3</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Roller (minimum 1.5ton)</td><td>3</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Water cart</td><td>3</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Powerfloat</td><td>3</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>LDV</td><td>3</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Possible points for plant and equipment</td><td>18</td><td></td><td></td></tr></table> Please note that if equipment will be hired a signed MOU should be submitted from the supplier. 4. Bank Rating (Scoring a maximum of 12%) Bank ratings should not be older than 30days.	Description of Equipment	Allocation of Points			Ownership	Hire	No proof	TLB/Excavator	3	1	0	Tipper truck (minimum 10m³)	3	1	0	Roller (minimum 1.5ton)	3	1	0	Water cart	3	1	0	Powerfloat	3	1	0	LDV	3	1	0	Possible points for plant and equipment	18		
Description of Equipment	Allocation of Points																																			
	Ownership	Hire	No proof																																	
TLB/Excavator	3	1	0																																	
Tipper truck (minimum 10m³)	3	1	0																																	
Roller (minimum 1.5ton)	3	1	0																																	
Water cart	3	1	0																																	
Powerfloat	3	1	0																																	
LDV	3	1	0																																	
Possible points for plant and equipment	18																																			

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
	12% - Contractor with bank rating A-C 0% - Contractor with bank rating D-E The points shall be totalled to obtain a score out of 100%, to obtain the final score for functionality. The minimum number of evaluation points to be eligible for functionality scoring shall be 70%.
3.11.3	Delete Clause 3.11.3 and replace with: Method 2: Functionality, Price and Specific Goals In the case of a functionality, price and specific goals: 1.) Score functionality, rejecting all tender offers that fail to achieve the minimum number of points for functionality as stated in the Tender Data. 2.) No tender must be regarded as an acceptable tender if it fails to achieve the minimum qualifying score for functionality as indicated in the tender invitation. 3.) Tenders that have achieved the minimum qualification score for functionality must be evaluated further in terms of the price and specific goals prescribed in paragraphs 3.11.4 and 3.11.5 below.
3.11.4	Delete Clause 3.11.4 and replace with: The 80/20 preference point system for acquisition of services, works or goods up to Rand value below R50 million. 4)(a)(i) The following formula must be used to calculate the points for price in respect of tenders(including price quotation) with a rand value equal to, or above R 30 000 and up to Rand value of R50 000 000 (all applicable taxes included): $Ps = 80 \left[1 - \frac{Pt - Pmin}{Pmin} \right]$ Where <i>Ps = Points scored for price of tender under consideration;</i> <i>Pt = Price of tender under consideration; and</i> <i>Pmin = Price of lowest acceptable tender.</i>

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender																
	(4)(a)(ii) An employer of state may apply the formula in paragraph (i) for price quotations with a value less than R30 000, if and when appropriate: The following table must be used to calculate the score out of 20 for specific goals: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Specific Goals</th><th>Number of points</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>100% or more Women or Youth owned</td><td>10</td></tr> <tr> <td>Less than 100% Women or youth owned</td><td>5</td></tr> <tr> <td>100% Black owned company</td><td>10</td></tr> <tr> <td>Less than 100% Black owned company</td><td>5</td></tr> <tr> <td>100% People living with disability</td><td>10</td></tr> <tr> <td>Locally owned companies (note: locally means Northern Cape Province)</td><td>5</td></tr> <tr> <td>Maximum obtainable points</td><td>20</td></tr> </tbody> </table> The following must be noted for the allocation of 20 points: • A tenderer might be requested to submit proof of its B-BBEE status level contributor. • A share certificate and or CIPC information of the company might be requested to be able to verify ownership. • Any other relevant evidence can be requested from the tenderer to substantiate the claim for the 20 points from any of the above specific goals on the table. • CSD printout must accompany all submission documents. • The above points can be increased, reduced and split to more than one specific goal, depending on the requirements of the bid and specifications, however when such is increased or reduced, the information must be published correctly to the bidder at the time of advert of tender, but total points must not exceed 20 points. • Locality points will be allocated to any company with a valid and verifiable address in the Northern Cape, e.g. CIPC, SARS, etc. A lease agreement must have substantiating legitimate evidence relating to the Northern Cape the address claimed, such as proof of rental payment and receipt of rentals by both the lessee and lessor. • If the price offered by the tenderer scoring the highest points is not reasonable, COGHSTA must not award the contract to the tenderer.	Specific Goals	Number of points	100% or more Women or Youth owned	10	Less than 100% Women or youth owned	5	100% Black owned company	10	Less than 100% Black owned company	5	100% People living with disability	10	Locally owned companies (note: locally means Northern Cape Province)	5	Maximum obtainable points	20
Specific Goals	Number of points																
100% or more Women or Youth owned	10																
Less than 100% Women or youth owned	5																
100% Black owned company	10																
Less than 100% Black owned company	5																
100% People living with disability	10																
Locally owned companies (note: locally means Northern Cape Province)	5																
Maximum obtainable points	20																

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Clause	Addition or Variation to Standard Conditions of Tender
	• COGHSTA may negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the highest points or cancel the tender. • If the tenderer does not agree to a reasonable price, negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the second highest points or cancel the tender. • If the tenderer scoring the second highest points does not agree to a reasonable price, negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the third highest points or cancel the tender. • If a reasonable price is not agreed as envisaged, COGHSTA must cancel the tender.
3.11.7	The financial offer will be scored in terms of formula 2 option 1
3.12	Replace the contents of the clause with the following: If requested by any Tenderer, submit for the Tenderers' information the policies and/or certificates of insurance which the conditions of contract identified in the Contract Data, require the Employer to provide.
3.16.2	Replace the contents of the clause with the following: Notice of non-acceptance of tender will not be sent to individual unsuccessful tenderers. Particulars of the accepted tender can be obtained from the Employer' Agent.
3.17	The successful tenderer shall receive one copy of the signed contract.
3.19	This clause is not applicable to private sector employers.

END OF SECTION

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

PORTION 1: TENDER

Section T1.3 Standard Conditions of Tender

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

STANDARD CONDITIONS OF TENDER

INDEX

Item	Description	Page No
1.	GENERAL	3
1.1	Actions	3
1.2	Tender Documents.....	4
1.3	Interpretation	4
1.4	Communication and employer's agent.....	5
1.5	The employer's right to accept or reject any tender offer	5
1.6	Procurement procedures	6
2.	TENDERER'S OBLIGATIONS.....	7
2.1	Eligibility	7
2.2	Cost of tendering	7
2.3	Check documents	8
2.4	Confidentiality and copyright of documents	8
2.5	Reference documents	8
2.6	Acknowledge addenda	8
2.7	Clarification meeting.....	8
2.8	Seek clarification	9
2.9	Insurance	9
2.10	Pricing the tender offer	9
2.11	Alterations to documents.....	9

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

2.12	Alternative tender offers	9
2.13	Submitting a tender offer	10
2.14	Information and data to be completed in all respects.....	11
2.15	Closing time	11
2.16	Tender offer validity.....	11
2.17	Clarification of tender offer after submission.....	12
2.18	Provide other material	12
2.19	Inspections, tests and analysis.....	12
2.20	Submit securities, bonds, policies, etc.	13
2.21	Check final draft	13
2.22	Return of other tender documents	13
2.23	Certificates	13
3.	THE EMPLOYER'S UNDERTAKINGS	13
3.1	Respond to requests from the tenderer	13
3.2	Issue Addenda	14
3.3	Return late tender offers.....	14
3.4	Opening of tender submissions	14
3.5	Two-envelope system	14
3.6	Non-disclosure	15
3.7	Grounds for rejection and disqualification.....	15
3.8	Test for responsiveness	15
3.9	Arithmetical errors, omissions and discrepancies	16
3.10	Clarification of a tender offer	17
3.11	Evaluation of tender offers.....	17
3.12	Insurance provided by the employer.....	22
3.13	Acceptance of tender offer	22
3.14	Prepare contract documents	23
3.15	Complete adjudicator's contract	23
3.16	Notice to unsuccessful tenderers.....	23
3.17	Provide copies of the contracts.....	23
3.18	Provide written reasons for actions taken	23
3.19	Transparency in the procurement process	24

These standard conditions of tender are identical to those published in Annex F of the Construction Industry Development Board's Board Notice 136 of 2015.

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/26/2025

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

STANDARD CONDITIONS OF TENDER

1. GENERAL

1.1 Actions

- 1.1.1 The employer and each tenderer submitting a tender offer shall comply with these conditions of tender. In their dealings with each other, they shall discharge their duties and obligations as set out in item 2 and 3, timeously and with integrity, and behave equitably, honestly and transparently, comply with all legal obligations and not engage in anticompetitive practices.
- 1.1.2 The employer and the tenderer and all their agents and employees involved in the tender process shall avoid conflicts of interest and where a conflict of interest is perceived or known, declare any such conflict of interest, indicating the nature of such conflict. Tenderers shall declare any potential conflict of interest in their tender submissions. Employees, agents and advisors of the employer shall declare any conflict of interest to whoever is responsible for overseeing the procurement process at the start of any deliberations relating to the procurement process or as soon as they become aware of such conflict, and abstain from any decisions where such conflict exists or recuse themselves from the procurement process, as appropriate.

Note: 1) *A conflict of interest may arise due to a conflict of roles which might provide an incentive for improper acts in some circumstances. A conflict of interest can create an appearance of*

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

impropriety that can undermine confidence in the ability of that person to act properly in his or her position even if no improper acts result.

- 2) *Conflicts of interest in respect of those engaged in the procurement process include direct, indirect or family interests in the tender or outcome of the procurement process and any personal bias, inclination, obligation, allegiance or loyalty which would in any way affect any decisions taken.*

- 1.1.3 The employer shall not seek and a tenderer shall not submit a tender without having a firm intention and the capacity to proceed with the contract

1.2 Tender Documents

The documents issued by the employer for the purpose of a tender offer are listed in the tender data.

1.3 Interpretation

- 1.3.1 The tender data and additional requirements contained in the tender schedules that are included in the returnable documents are deemed to be part of these conditions of tender.

- 1.3.2 These conditions of tender, the tender data and tender schedules which are only required for tender evaluation purposes, shall not form part of any contract arising from the invitation to tender.

- 1.3.3 For the purposes of these conditions of tender, the following definitions apply:

a) conflict of interest means any situation in which:

- i) someone in a position of trust has competing professional or personal interests which make it difficult to fulfill his or her duties impartially;
- ii) an individual or organization is in a position to exploit a professional or official capacity in some way for their personal or corporate benefit; or
- iii) incompatibility or contradictory interests exist between an employee and the organization which employs that employee.

b) comparative offer means the price after the factors of a non-firm price and all unconditional discounts it can be utilized to have been taken into consideration;

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

- c) **corrupt practice** means the offering, giving, receiving or soliciting of anything of value to influence the action of the employer or his staff or agents in the tender process;
- d) **fraudulent practice** means the misrepresentation of the facts in order to influence the tender process or the award of a contract arising from a tender offer to the detriment of the employer, including collusive practices intended to establish prices at artificial levels;
- e) **organization** means a company, firm, enterprise, association or other legal entity, whether incorporated or not, or a public body;
- f) **functionality** means the totality of features and characteristics of a product or service that bear on its ability to satisfy stated or implied needs.

1.4 Communication and employer's agent

Each communication between the employer and a tenderer shall be to or from the employer's agent only, and in a form that can be readily read, copied and recorded. Communications shall be in the English language. The employer shall not take any responsibility for non-receipt of communications from or by a tenderer. The name and contact details of the employer's agent are stated in the tender data.

1.5 The employer's right to accept or reject any tender offer

1.5.1 An organ of state may, prior to the award of the tender, cancel a tender if-

- (a) due to changed circumstances, there is no longer a need for the services, works or goods requested; or
- (b) funds are no longer available to cover the total envisaged expenditure; or
- (c) no acceptable tenders are received.

1.5.2 The decision to cancel a tender must be published in the cidb website and in the government Tender Bulletin for the media in which the original tender invitation was advertised.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

1.6 Procurement procedures

1.6.1 General

Unless otherwise stated in the tender data, a contract will, subject to 3.13, be concluded with the tenderer who in terms of 3.11 is the highest ranked or the tenderer scoring the highest number of tender evaluation points, as relevant, based on the tender submissions that are received at the closing time for tenders.

1.6.2 Competitive negotiation procedure

1.6.2.1 Where the tender data require that the competitive negotiation procedure is to be followed, tenderers shall submit tender offers in response to the proposed contract in the first round of submissions. Notwithstanding the requirements of 3.4, the employer shall announce only the names of the tenderers who make a submission. The requirements of 3.8 relating to the material deviations or qualifications which affect the competitive position of tenderers shall not apply.

1.6.2.2 All responsive tenderers, or not less than three responsive tenderers that are highest ranked in terms of the evaluation method and evaluation criteria stated in the tender data, shall be invited in each round to enter into competitive negotiations, based on the principle of equal treatment and keeping confidential the proposed solutions and associated information. Notwithstanding the provisions of 2.17, the employer may request that tenders be clarified, specified and fine-tuned in order to improve a tenderer's competitive position provided that such clarification, specification, fine-tuning or additional information does not alter any fundamental aspects of the offers or impose substantial new requirements which restrict or distort competition or have a discriminatory effect.

1.6.2.3 At the conclusion of each round of negotiations, tenderers shall be invited by the employer to make a fresh tender offer, based on the same evaluation criteria, with or without adjusted weightings. Tenderers shall be advised when they are to submit their best and final offer.

1.6.2.4 The contract shall be awarded in accordance with the provisions of 3.11 and 3.13 after tenderers have been requested to submit their best and final offer.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

1.6.3 Proposal procedure using the two stage-system

1.6.3.1 Option 1

Tenderers shall in the first stage submit technical proposals and, if required, cost parameters around which a contract may be negotiated. The employer shall evaluate each responsive submission in terms of the method of evaluation stated in the tender data, and in the second stage negotiate a contract with the tenderer scoring the highest number of evaluation points and award the contract in terms of these conditions of tender.

1.6.3.2 Option 2

1.6.3.2.1 Tenderers shall submit in the first stage only technical proposals. The employer shall invite all responsive tenderers to submit tender offers in the second stage, following the issuing of procurement documents.

1.6.3.2.2 The employer shall evaluate tenders received during the second stage in terms of the method of evaluation stated in the tender data, and award the contract in terms of these conditions of tender.

2. TENDERER'S OBLIGATIONS

2.1 Eligibility

2.1.1 Submit a tender offer only if the tenderer satisfies the criteria stated in the tender data and the tenderer, or any of his principals, is not under any restriction to do business with employer.

2.1.2 Notify the employer of any proposed material change in the capabilities or formation of the tendering entity (or both) or any other criteria which formed part of the qualifying requirements used by the employer as the basis in a prior process to invite the tenderer to submit a tender offer and obtain the employer's written approval to do so prior to the closing time for tenders.

2.2 Cost of tendering

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

2.2.1 Accept that, unless otherwise stated in the tender data, the employer will not compensate the tenderer for any costs incurred in the preparation and submission of a tender offer, including the costs of any testing necessary to demonstrate that aspects of the offer complies with requirements.

2.2.2 The cost of the tender documents charged by the employer shall be limited to the actual cost incurred by the employer for printing the documents. Employers must attempt to make available the tender documents on its website so as not to incur any costs pertaining to the printing of the tender documents.

2.3 Check documents

Check the tender documents on receipt for completeness and notify the employer of any discrepancy or omission.

2.4 Confidentiality and copyright of documents

Treat as confidential all matters arising in connection with the tender. Use and copy the documents issued by the employer only for the purpose of preparing and submitting a tender offer in response to the invitation.

2.5 Reference documents

Obtain, as necessary for submitting a tender offer, copies of the latest versions of standards, specifications, conditions of contract and other publications, which are not attached but which are incorporated into the tender documents by reference.

2.6 Acknowledge addenda

Acknowledge receipt of addenda to the tender documents, which the employer may issue, and if necessary apply for an extension to the closing time stated in the tender data, in order to take the addenda into account.

2.7 Clarification meeting

Attend, where required, a clarification meeting at which tenderers may familiarize themselves

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

with aspects of the proposed work, services or supply and raise questions. Details of the meeting (s) are stated in the tender data.

2.8 Seek clarification

Request clarification of the tender documents, if necessary, by notifying the employer at least five working days before the closing time stated in the tender data.

2.9 Insurance

Be aware that the extent of insurance to be provided by the employer (if any) might not be for the full cover required in terms of the conditions of contract identified in the contract data. The tenderer is advised to seek qualified advice regarding insurance.

2.10 Pricing the tender offer

- 2.10.1 Include in the rates, prices, and the tendered total of the prices (if any) all duties, taxes (except Value Added Tax (VAT), and other levies payable by the successful tenderer, such duties, taxes and levies being those applicable 14 days before the closing time stated in the tender data.
- 2.10.2 Show VAT payable by the employer separately as an addition to the tendered total of the prices.
- 2.10.3 Provide rates and prices that are fixed for the duration of the contract and not subject to adjustment except as provided for in the conditions of contract identified in the contract data.
- 2.10.4 State the rates and prices in Rand unless instructed otherwise in the tender data. The conditions of contract identified in the contract data may provide for part payment in other currencies.

2.11 Alterations to documents

Do not make any alterations or additions to the tender documents, except to comply with instructions issued by the employer, or necessary to correct errors made by the tenderer. All signatories to the tender offer shall initial all such alterations.

2.12 Alternative tender offers

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- 2.12.1 Unless otherwise stated in the tender data, submit alternative tender offers only if a main tender offer, strictly in accordance with all the requirements of the tender documents, is also submitted as well as a schedule that compares the requirements of the tender documents with the alternative requirements that are proposed.
- 2.12.2 Accept that an alternative tender offer may be based only on the criteria stated in the tender data or criteria otherwise acceptable to the employer.
- 2.12.3 An alternative tender offer may only be considered in the event that the main tender offer is the winning tender.

2.13 Submitting a tender offer

- 2.13.1 Submit one tender offer only, either as a single tendering entity or as a member in a joint venture to provide the whole of the works, services or supply identified in the contract data and described in the scope of works, unless stated otherwise in the tender data.
- 2.13.2 Return all returnable documents to the employer after completing them in their entirety, either electronically (if they were issued in electronic format) or by writing legibly in non-erasable ink.
- 2.13.3 Submit the parts of the tender offer communicated on paper as an original plus the number of copies stated in the tender data, with an English translation of any documentation in a language other than English, and the parts communicated electronically in the same format as they were issued by the employer.
- 2.13.4 Sign the original and all copies of the tender offer where required in terms of the tender data. The employer will hold all authorized signatories liable on behalf of the tenderer. Signatories for tenderers proposing to contract as joint ventures shall state which of the signatories is the lead partner whom the employer shall hold liable for the purpose of the tender offer.
- 2.13.5 Seal the original and each copy of the tender offer as separate packages marking the packages as "ORIGINAL" and "COPY". Each package shall state on the outside the employer's address and identification details stated in the tender data, as well as the tenderer's name and contact address.
- 2.13.6 Where a two-envelope system is required in terms of the tender data, place and seal the returnable documents listed in the tender data in an envelope marked "financial proposal" and place the remaining returnable documents in an envelope marked "technical proposal".

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Each envelope shall state on the outside the employer's address and identification details stated in the tender data, as well as the tenderer's name and contact address.

- 2.13.7 Seal the original tender offer and copy packages together in an outer package that states on the outside only the employer's address and identification details as stated in the tender data.
- 2.13.8 Accept that the employer will not assume any responsibility for the misplacement or premature opening of the tender offer if the outer package is not sealed and marked as stated.
- 2.13.9 Accept that tender offers submitted by facsimile or e-mail will be rejected by the employer, unless stated otherwise in the tender data.

2.14 Information and data to be completed in all respects

Accept that tender offers, which do not provide all the data or information requested completely and in the form required, may be regarded by the employer as non-responsive.

2.15 Closing time

- 2.15.1 Ensure that the employer receives the tender offer at the address specified in the tender data not later than the closing time stated in the tender data. Accept that proof of posting shall not be accepted as proof of delivery.
- 2.15.2 Accept that, if the employer extends the closing time stated in the tender data for any reason, the requirements of these conditions of tender apply equally to the extended deadline.

2.16 Tender offer validity

- 2.16.1 Hold the tender offer(s) valid for acceptance by the employer at any time during the validity period stated in the tender data after the closing time stated in the tender data.
- 2.16.2 If requested by the employer, consider extending the validity period stated in the tender data for an agreed additional period with or without any conditions attached to such extension.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

2.16.3 Accept that a tender submission that has been submitted to the employer may only be withdrawn or substituted by giving the employer's agent written notice before the closing time for tenders that a tender is to be withdrawn or substituted.

2.16.4 Where a tender submission is to be substituted, submit a substitute tender in accordance with the requirements of F.2.13 with the packages clearly marked as "SUBSTITUTE"

2.17 Clarification of tender offer after submission

Provide clarification of a tender offer in response to a request to do so from the employer during the evaluation of tender offers. This may include providing a breakdown of rates or prices and correction of arithmetical errors by the adjustment of certain rates or item prices (or both). No change in the competitive position of tenderers or substance of the tender offer is sought, offered, or permitted.

Note: *Sub-clause F.2.17 does not preclude the negotiation of the final terms of the contract with a preferred tenderer following a competitive selection process, should the Employer elect to do so.*

2.18 Provide other material

2.18.1 Provide, on request by the employer, any other material that has a bearing on the tender offer, the tenderer's commercial position (including notarized joint venture agreements), preferencing arrangements, or samples of materials, considered necessary by the employer for the purpose of a full and fair risk assessment. Should the tenderer not provide the material, or a satisfactory reason as to why it cannot be provided, by the time for submission stated in the employer's request, the employer may regard the tender offer as non-responsive.

2.18.2 Dispose of samples of materials provided for evaluation by the employer, where required.

2.19 Inspections, tests and analysis

Provide access during working hours to premises for inspections, tests and analysis as provided for in the tender data.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

2.20 Submit securities, bonds, policies, etc.

If requested, submit for the employer's acceptance before formation of the contract, all securities, bonds, guarantees, policies and certificates of insurance required in terms of the conditions of contract identified in the contract data.

2.21 Check final draft

Check the final draft of the contract provided by the employer within the time available for the employer to issue the contract.

2.22 Return of other tender documents

If so instructed by the employer, return all retained tender documents within 28 days after the expiry of the validity period stated in the tender data.

2.23 Certificates

Include in the tender submission or provide the employer with any certificates as stated in the tender data.

3. THE EMPLOYER'S UNDERTAKINGS

3.1 Respond to requests from the tenderer

3.1.1 Unless otherwise stated in the tender Data, respond to a request for clarification received up to five working days before the tender closing time stated in the Tender Data and notify all tenderers who drew procurement documents.

3.1.2 Consider any request to make a material change in the capabilities or formation of the tendering entity (or both) or any other criteria which formed part of the qualifying requirements used to prequalify a tenderer to submit a tender offer in terms of a previous procurement process and deny any such request if as a consequence:

- a) an individual firm, or a joint venture as a whole, or any individual member of the joint venture fails to meet any of the collective or individual qualifying requirements;
- b) the new partners to a joint venture were not prequalified in the first instance, either as individual firms or as another joint venture; or

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- c) in the opinion of the Employer, acceptance of the material change would compromise the outcome of the prequalification process.

3.2 Issue Addenda

If necessary, issue addenda that may amend or amplify the tender documents to each tenderer during the period from the date that tender documents are available until three days before the tender closing time stated in the Tender Data. If, as a result a tenderer applies for an extension to the closing time stated in the Tender Data, the Employer may grant such extension and, shall then notify all tenderers who drew documents.

3.3 Return late tender offers

Return tender offers received after the closing time stated in the Tender Data, unopened, (unless it is necessary to open a tender submission to obtain a forwarding address), to the tenderer concerned.

3.4 Opening of tender submissions

- 3.4.1 Unless the two-envelope system is to be followed, open valid tender submissions in the presence of tenderers' agents who choose to attend at the time and place stated in the tender data. Tender submissions for which acceptable reasons for withdrawal have been submitted will not be opened.
- 3.4.2 Announce at the meeting held immediately after the opening of tender submissions, at a venue indicated in the tender data, the name of each tenderer whose tender offer is opened and, where applicable, the total of his prices, number of points claimed for its BBBEE status level and time for completion for the main tender offer only.
- 3.4.3 Make available the record outlined in 3.4.2 to all interested persons upon request

3.5 Two-envelope system

- 3.5.1 Where stated in the tender data that a two-envelope system is to be followed, open only the technical proposal of valid tenders in the presence of tenderers' agents who choose to attend at the time and place stated in the tender data and announce the name of each tenderer whose technical proposal is opened.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

3.5.2 Evaluate functionality of the technical proposals offered by tenderers, then advise tenderers who remain in contention for the award of the contract of the time and place when the financial proposals will be opened. Open only the financial proposals of tenderers, who score in the functionality evaluation more than the minimum number of points for functionality stated in the tender data, and announce the score obtained for the technical proposals and the total price and any points claimed on BBBEE status level. Return unopened financial proposals to tenderers whose technical proposals failed to achieve the minimum number of points for functionality.

3.6 Non-disclosure

Not disclose to tenderers, or to any other person not officially concerned with such processes, information relating to the evaluation and comparison of tender offers, the final evaluation price and recommendations for the award of a contract, until after the award of the contract to the successful tenderer.

3.7 Grounds for rejection and disqualification

Determine whether there has been any effort by a tenderer to influence the processing of tender offers and instantly disqualify a tenderer (and his tender offer) if it is established that he engaged in corrupt or fraudulent practices.

3.8 Test for responsiveness

3.8.1 Determine, after opening and before detailed evaluation, whether each tender offer properly received:

- a) complies with the requirements of these Conditions of Tender,
- b) has been properly and fully completed and signed, and
- c) is responsive to the other requirements of the tender documents.

3.8.2 A responsive tender is one that conforms to all the terms, conditions, and specifications of the tender documents without material deviation or qualification. A material deviation or qualification is one which, in the Employer's opinion, would:

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- a) detrimentally affect the scope, quality, or performance of the works, services or supply identified in the Scope of Work,
- b) significantly change the Employer's or the tenderer's risks and responsibilities under the contract, or
- c) affect the competitive position of other tenderers presenting responsive tenders, if it were to be rectified.

Reject a non-responsive tender offer, and not allow it to be subsequently made responsive by correction or withdrawal of the non- conforming deviation or reservation.

3.9 Arithmetical errors, omissions and discrepancies

3.9.1 Check the highest ranked tender or tenderer with the highest number of tender evaluation points after the evaluation of tender offers in accordance with 3.11 for:

- a) the gross misplacement of the decimal point in any unit rate;
- b) omissions made in completing the pricing schedule or bills of quantities; or
- c) arithmetic errors in:
 - i) line item totals resulting from the product of a unit rate and a quantity in bills of quantities or schedules of prices; or
 - ii) the summation of the prices.

3.9.2 The employer must correct the arithmetical errors in the following manner:

- a) Where there is a discrepancy between the amounts in words and amounts in figures, the amount in words shall govern.
- b) If bills of quantities or pricing schedules apply and there is an error in the line item total resulting from the product of the unit rate and the quantity, the line item total shall govern and the rate shall be corrected. Where there is an obviously gross misplacement of the decimal point in the unit rate, the line item total as quoted shall govern, and the unit rate shall be corrected.
- c) Where there is an error in the total of the prices either as a result of other corrections required by this checking process or in the tenderer's addition of prices, the total of the prices shall govern and the tenderer will be asked to revise selected item prices (and their rates if bills of quantities apply) to achieve the tendered total of the prices.

Consider the rejection of a tender offer if the tenderer does not correct or accept the correction of the arithmetical error in the manner described above.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

3.10 Clarification of a tender offer

Obtain clarification from a tenderer on any matter that could give rise to ambiguity in a contract arising from the tender offer.

3.11 Evaluation of tender offers

3.11.1 General

Appoint an evaluation panel of not less than three persons. Reduce each responsive tender offer to a comparative offer and evaluate them using the tender evaluation methods and associated evaluation criteria and weightings that are specified in the tender data.

3.11.2 Method 1: Price and Specific Goals

In the case of a price and specific goals:

- 1) Score tender evaluation points for price
- 2) Score points for specific goals
- 3) Add the points scored for price and specific goals.

3.11.3 Method 2: Functionality, Price and Specific Goals

In the case of a functionality, price and specific goals:

- 1) Score functionality, rejecting all tender offers that fail to achieve the minimum number of points for functionality as stated in the Tender Data.
- 2) No tender must be regarded as an acceptable tender if it fails to achieve the minimum qualifying score for functionality as indicated in the tender invitation.
- 3) Tenders that have achieved the minimum qualification score for functionality must be evaluated further in terms of the price and specific goals prescribed in paragraphs 3.11.4 and 3.11.5 below.

3.11.4 The 80/20 preference point system for acquisition of services, works or goods up to Rand value below R50 million.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- 4)(a)(i) The following formula must be used to calculate the points for price in respect of tenders(including price quotation) with a rand value equal to, or above R 30 000 and up to Rand value of R50 000 000 (all applicable taxes included):

$$Ps = 80 \left[1 - \frac{Pt - P_{min}}{P_{min}} \right]$$

Where

Ps = Points scored for price of tender under consideration;

Pt = Price of tender under consideration; and

Pmin = Price of lowest acceptable tender.

- (4)(a)(ii) An employer of state may apply the formula in paragraph (i) for price quotations with a value less than R30 000, if and when appropriate:

The following table must be used to calculate the score out of 20 for specific goals:

Specific Goals	Number of points
100% or more Women or Youth owned company	10
Less than 100% Women or youth owned company	5
100% Black owned company	10
Less than 100% Black owned company	5
100% People living with disability	10
Locally owned companies	5
Maximum obtainable points	20

The following must be noted for the allocation of 20 points:

- A tenderer might be requested to submit proof of its B-BBEE status level contributor.
- A share certificate and or CIPC information of the company might be requested to be able to verify ownership.
- Any other relevant evidence can be requested from the tenderer to substantiate the claim for the 20 points from any of the above specific goals on the table.
- CSD printout must accompany all submission documents.
- The above points can be increased, reduced and split to more than one specific goal, depending on the requirements of the bid and specifications, however when such is increased or reduced, the information must be published correctly to the bidder at the time of advert of tender, but total points must not exceed 20 points.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- Locality points will be allocated to any company with a valid and verifiable address in the Northern Cape, e.g. CIPC, SARS, etc. A lease agreement must have substantiating legitimate evidence relating to the Northern Cape the address claimed, such as proof of rental payment and receipt of rentals by both the lessee and lessor.
- If the price offered by the tenderer scoring the highest points is not reasonable, COGHSTA must not award the contract to the tenderer.
- COGHSTA may negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the highest points or cancel the tender.
- If the tenderer does not agree to a reasonable price, negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the second highest points or cancel the tender.
- If the tenderer scoring the second highest points does not agree to a reasonable price, negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the third highest points or cancel the tender.
- If a reasonable price is not agreed as envisaged, COGHSTA must cancel the tender.

3.11.5 The 90/10 preference points system for acquisition of services, works or goods with a Rand value above R 50 million.

- (5)(a) The following formula must be used to calculate the points for price in respect of tenders with a Rand value above R50 000 000 (all applicable taxes included):

90/10

$$P_s = 90 \left(1 - \frac{P_t - P_{\min}}{P_{\min}} \right)$$

Where

P_s = Points scored for price of tender under consideration;

P_t = Price of tender under consideration; and

P_{min} = Price of lowest acceptable tender.

The following table must be used to calculate the score out of 10 for specific goals:

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

Specific Goals	Number of points
100% or more Women or Youth owned	5
Less than 100% Women or youth owned	2
100% Black owned company	5
Less than 100% Black owned company	2
100% People living with disability	5
Locally owned companies	2
Maximum obtainable points	10

The following must be noted for the allocation of 10 points:

- A tenderer might be requested to submit proof of its B-BBEE status level contributor.
- A share certificate and or CIPC information of the company might be requested to be able to verify ownership.
- Any other relevant evidence can be requested from the tenderer to substantiate the claim for the 10 points from any of the above specific goals on the table.
- CSD printout must accompany all submission documents.
- The above points can be increased, reduced and split to more than one specific goal, depending on the requirements of the bid and specifications, however when such is increased or reduced, the information must be published correctly to the bidder at the time of advert of tender, but total points must not exceed 10 points.
- Locality points will be allocated to any company with a valid and verifiable address in the Northern Cape, e.g. CIPC, SARS, etc. A lease agreement must have substantiating legitimate evidence relating to the Northern Cape the address claimed, such as proof of rental payment and receipt of rentals by both the lessee and lessor.
- If the price offered by the tenderer scoring the highest points is not reasonable, COGHSTA must not award the contract to the tenderer.
- COGHSTA may negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the highest points or cancel the tender.
- If the tenderer does not agree to a reasonable price, negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the second highest points or cancel the tender.
- If the tenderer scoring the second highest points does not agree to a reasonable price, negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the third highest points or cancel the tender.
- If a reasonable price is not agreed as envisaged, COGHSTA must cancel the tender.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

3.11.6 Decimal places

Score price, preference and functionality, as relevant, to two decimal places.

3.11.7 Scoring Price

Score price of remaining responsive tender offers using the following formula:

$$NFO = W_1 \times A$$

where: NFO is the number of tender evaluation points awarded for price.

W_1 is the maximum possible number of tender evaluation points awarded for price as stated in the Tender Data.

A is a number calculated using the formula and option described in Table 1 as stated in the Tender Data

Table 1: Formulae for calculating the value of A

Formula	Comparison aimed at	Option 1a	Option 2a
1	Highest price or discount	$A = (1 + (P - P_m))$ P_m	$A = P / P_m$
2	Lowest price or percentage commission / fee	$A = (1 - (P - P_m))$ P_m	$A = P_m / P$
a	P_m is the comparative offer of the most favourable comparative offer. P is the comparative offer of the tender offer under consideration.		

3.11.8 Scoring preferences

Confirm that tenderers are eligible for the preferences claimed in accordance with the provisions of the tender data and reject all claims for preferences where tenderers are not eligible for such preferences.

Calculate the total number of tender evaluation points for preferences claimed in accordance with the provisions of the tender data.

3.11.9 Scoring functionality

Score each of the criteria and sub criteria for quality in accordance with the provisions of the

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

Tender Data.

Calculate the total number of tender evaluation points for quality using the following formula:

$$N_Q = W_2 \times S_o / M_s$$

where: S_o is the score for quality allocated to the submission under consideration;
 M_s is the maximum possible score for quality in respect of a submission; and
 W_2 is the maximum possible number of tender evaluation points awarded for the quality as stated in the tender data

3.12 Insurance provided by the employer

If requested by the proposed successful tenderer, submit for the tenderer's information the policies and / or certificates of insurance which the conditions of contract identified in the contract data, require the employer to provide.

3.13 Acceptance of tender offer

Accept the tender offer, if in the opinion of the employer, it does not present any risk and only if the tenderer:

- a) is not under restrictions, or has principals who are under restrictions, preventing participating in the employer's procurement,
- b) can, as necessary and in relation to the proposed contract, demonstrate that he or she possesses the professional and technical qualifications, professional and technical competence, financial resources, equipment and other physical facilities, managerial capability, reliability, experience and reputation, expertise and the personnel, to perform the contract,
- c) has the legal capacity to enter into the contract,
- d) is not insolvent, in receivership, under Business Rescue as provided for in chapter 6 of the Companies Act, 2008, bankrupt or being wound up, has his affairs administered by a court or a judicial officer, has suspended his business activities, or is subject to legal proceedings in respect of any of the foregoing,
- e) complies with the legal requirements, if any, stated in the tender data, and
- f) is able, in the opinion of the employer, to perform the contract free of conflicts of interest.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

3.14 Prepare contract documents

3.14.1 If necessary, revise documents that shall form part of the contract and that were issued by the employer as part of the tender documents to take account of:

- a) addenda issued during the tender period,
- b) inclusion of some of the returnable documents, and
- c) other revisions agreed between the employer and the successful tenderer.

3.14.2 Complete the schedule of deviations attached to the form of offer and acceptance, if any.

3.15 Complete adjudicator's contract

Unless alternative arrangements have been agreed or otherwise provided for in the contract, arrange for both parties to complete formalities for appointing the selected adjudicator at the same time as the main contract is signed.

3.16 Notice to unsuccessful tenderers

3.16.1 Notify the successful tenderer of the employer's acceptance of his tender offer by completing and returning one copy of the form of offer and acceptance before the expiry of the validity period stated in the tender data, or agreed additional period.

3.16.2 After the successful tenderer has been notified of the employer's acceptance of the tender, notify other tenderers that their tender offers have not been accepted.

3.17 Provide copies of the contracts

3.17.1 Provide to the successful tenderer the number of copies stated in the Tender Data of the signed copy of the contract as soon as possible after completion and signing of the form of offer and acceptance.

3.18 Provide written reasons for actions taken

Provide upon request written reasons to tenderers for any action that is taken in applying these conditions of tender, but withhold information which is not in the public interest to be divulged, which is considered to prejudice the legitimate commercial interests of tenderers or might prejudice fair competition between tenderers.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

3.19 Transparency in the procurement process

- 3.19.1 The CIDB prescripts require that tenders must be advertised and be registered on the CIDB i. Tender system.
- 3.19.2 The employer must adopt a transparency model that incorporates the disclosure and accountability as transparency requirements in the procurement process.
- 3.19.3 The transparency model must identify the criteria for selection of projects, project information template and the threshold value of the projects to be disclosed in the public domain at various intervals of delivery of infrastructure projects.
- 3.19.4 The client must publish the information on a quarterly basis which contains the following information:
- Procurement planning process
 - Procurement method and evaluation process
 - Contract type
 - Contract status
 - Number of firms tendering
 - Cost estimate
 - Contract title
 - Contract firm(s)
 - Contract price
 - Contract scope of work
 - Contract start date and duration
 - Contract evaluation reports
- 3.19.5 The employer must establish a Consultative Forum which will conduct a random audit in the implementation of the transparency requirements in the procurement process.
- 3.19.6 Consultative Forum must be an independent structure from the bid committees.
- 3.19.7 The information must be published on the employer's website.
- 3.19.8 Records of such disclosed information must be retained for audit purposes.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 1: TENDER

**Part T2
Returnable Documents**

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

RETURNABLE DOCUMENTS

CONTENTS LIST

Section	Description	Page No
T2.1	LIST OF RETURNABLE DOCUMENTS	T2.2
T2.2	RETURNABLE SCHEDULES	T2.4

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

T2.1

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

PORTION 1: TENDER

Section T2.1

List of returnable documents

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

LIST OF RETURNABLE DOCUMENTS

1. The following Returnable Schedules are required for tender evaluation purposes and must be submit with their tenders:
 - (a) Copy of Certificate of Contractor Registration with the CIDB,
 - (b) Original valid Tax Clearance Certificate, or a recent CSD report clearly stipulating the tax status, or a unique security personal identification number (PIN) issued by the SA Revenue Services (in terms of the Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2022 Government Gazette No. 2721. Tenderers shall be registered and in good standing with the South African Revenue Service (SARS) on CSD, if noncompliant, the tenderer must submit evidence from SARS informing the department of why it is none complaint and when is the estimated resolution,
 - (c) Certified copy of VAT Registration Certificate (if VAT number is not included in tax clearance certificate),
 - (d) Certified copy of Letter of Good Standing issued by the Department of Labour in terms of Act 130 of 1993,
 - (e) Certified copy of Unemployment Insurance Fund Certificate of Compliance in terms of Act 4 of 2002,
 - (f) Certified copy of Certificate of Incorporation (if tenderer is a Company),
 - (g) Certified copy of Founding Statement (if tenderer is a Closed Corporation),
 - (h) Certified copy of Partnership Agreement (if tenderer is a Partnership),

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- (i) Certified copy of Identity Document (if tenderer is a One-man concern),
 - (j) Joint Venture Agreement (if tenderer is a Joint Venture),
 - (k) Curriculum vitae of the person who prepares the Contractor's Health and Safety Plan, and
 - (l) Curriculum vitae of the Health and Safety Officer the successful tenderer intends appointing in accordance with the Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993).
 - (m) Curriculum Vitae of all supervisory staff,
 - (n) B-BBEE Verification Certificate,
 - (o) CSD Report,
 - (p) Copy of NHBRC registration certificate,
 - (q) Copy of Municipal Accounts (Rates, Taxes and services), and
 - (r) Bank rating (not older than 30days).
2. The returnable schedules included in Section T2.2 will be used to evaluate tenders received. These schedules will also form part of the Contract.

END OF SECTION

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 1: TENDER

Section T2.2 Returnable schedules

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

RETURNABLE SCHEDULES

INDEX

Section	Description	Page No
T2.2.1	Alterations by Tenderer	T2.2
T2.2.2	Works Previously Executed	T2.3
T2.2.3	Present Commitments	T2.4
T2.2.4	Supervisory and Safety Personnel	T2.5
T2.2.5	Labour Utilisation	T2.6
T2.2.6	Compliance with OHSA (Act 85 of 1993).....	T2.10
T2.2.7	Plant and Equipment	T2.11
T2.2.8	Proposed Sub-contractors	T2.12
T2.2.9	Site Inspection Certificate	T2.13
T2.2.10	Authority of Signatory	T2.14
T2.2.11	Record of Addenda to Tender Document	T2.15
T2.2.12	Compulsory Enterprise Questionnaire	T2.16
T2.2.13	Bidder's Disclosure	T2.19
	SBD 2 - Tax Clearance Requirements	
	SBD 4 - Bidder's Disclosure	
	SBD 6.1 - Preference Points Claim Form in Terms of the Preferential Procurement Regulations 2022	

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SBD 7.1 - Contract Form – Purchase of Goods / Works

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Should the Tenderer desire to make any departures from or modifications to the General Conditions of Contract, Contract Data, Scope of Work, Pricing Data or the Drawings, or to qualify his tender in any way, he shall set out his proposals clearly hereunder or alternatively state them in a covering letter attached to his tender and referred to hereunder, failing which the tender will be deemed to be unqualified.

[illegible]

Date : _____

--	--

11/11/2019

11/11/2019

Witness 2

WORKS PREVIOUSLY EXECUTED

The following is a statement of major works successfully executed by myself/ourselves in recent years:

Employer	Consulting Engineers (incl. contact person and contact details)	Nature of Works	Value of Works	Duration and Completion Date

Failure to detail the required information, shall signify that the tender is submitted by an inexperienced tenderer.

Signature of Tenderer : _____ Date : _____

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PRESENT COMMITMENTS
(Attach appointment letters for support)

Employer	Consulting Engineers (incl. contact person and contact details)	Nature of Works	Value of Works	Status of Project	Duration and Completion Date

Signature of Tenderer : _____ Date : _____

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SUPERVISORY AND SAFETY PERSONNEL

PREVIOUS EXPERIENCE ON WORKS OF A SIMILAR NATURE DURING THE LAST FIVE YEARS

Name	% Time on Site	Position (Current)	Service (Years)	Name of Project And year executed	Value of Works	Position Occupied
Contracts Manager						
Contractor's Site Agent						
Contractor's Foremen						
Construction Health and Safety Officer						

Tenderers shall indicate the percentage of working time these persons will be engaged on site. Tenderers are required to provide copies of curriculum vitas of all supervisory and safety personnel.

Signature of Tenderer : _____

Date : _____

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

LABOUR UTILISATION

Labour Categories - Definitions

NOTE: These definitions serve as a guideline to complete the following table and will in no respect alter the Scope of Work.

1. General Foreman / Foreman

An employee who gives out work to and directly co-ordinates and supervises employees. His duties encompass any one or more of the following activities :

- a) Supervision;
- b) maintaining discipline;
- c) ensuring safety on the workplace;
- d) being responsible to the Contractor for efficiency and production for his portion of the works; and
- e) performing skilled work, whether in an instructional capacity or otherwise.

2. Charge hand

An employee engaged in any one or more of the following activities :

- a) Being primarily employed in a supervisory capacity, but who may also be doing the work of an artisan;
- b) giving out work to other employees under his control and supervision;
- c) ensuring safety on the workplace;
- d) maintaining discipline; and
- e) being directly responsible to a general foreman or foreman or the Contractor or the Contractor's representative for efficiency and production for his portion of the works.

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

3. Artisan

An employee who has successfully completed all prescribed courses at a practical institutional training centre for a particular trade and who has successfully completed the on-site period of training as prescribed and who has successfully passed the prescribed trade tests.

4. Team Leader

An employee engaged in any one or more of the following activities :

- a) Being employed in a supervisory capacity, but who may also be doing the work of a skilled person;
- b) giving out work to other employees under his control and supervision;
- c) maintaining discipline;
- d) being directly responsible to a Charge hand or a foreman or a general foreman or the employer's authorised representative for efficiency and production for his portion of the works.

5. Skilled Employee

An employee engaged in an ancillary trade or an assistant artisan.

6. Semi-Skilled Employee

An employee with any specified skills, an apprentice or a trainee-artisan.

7. Unskilled Employee

An employee engaged on any task or operation not specified above.

8. Imported Employee

Personnel permanently employed by Contractor.

9. Local Employee

Temporary workforce employed through Labour Desk.

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

MAN DAYS

Categories	No. of Man Days	
	Imported	Local
1. Contracts Manager		
2. Site Agent		
3. Foreman/Supervisors (specify type)		
3.1 _____		
3.2 _____		
3.3 _____		
4. Safety Inspectors (specify type)		
4.1 _____		
4.2 _____		
5. Charge hands		
6. Artisans		
7. Operators/Drivers		
8. Clerks/Storeman		
9. Team Leader		

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Categories	No. of Man Days	
	Imported	Local
10. Skilled Labour		
11. Semi-skilled Labour		
12. Unskilled Labour		

Signature of Tenderer

Date

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

COMPLIANCE WITH OHSA (ACT 85 OF 1993)

Tenderers are required to satisfy the Employer and the Engineer as to their ability and available resources to comply with the above by answering the following questions and providing the relevant information required below.

1. Is the Contractor familiar with the OHSA (ACT 85 OF 1993) and its Regulations? **YES / NO**
2. Who will prepare the Contractor's Health and Safety Plan? (Provide a copy of the person/s curriculum vitae/s or company profile).

3. Does the Contractor have a health and safety policy? (If yes, provide a copy). **YES / NO**
How is this policy communicated to all employees?

4. Does the Contractor keep records of safety aspects of each construction site? **YES / NO**
If yes, what records are kept?

5. Does the Contractor conduct monthly safety meetings? If yes, who is the chairperson of the meeting, and who attends these meetings? **YES / NO**

6. Does the Contractor have a safety officer in his employment, responsible for the overall safety of his company? **YES / NO**
If yes, please explain his duties and provide a copy of his CV.

7. Does the Contractor have trained first aid employees? If yes, indicate who. **YES / NO**

8. Does the Contractor have a safety induction training programme in place? **YES / NO**
(If yes, provide a copy).

Signature of Tenderer

Date

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PLANT AND EQUIPMENT

1. Major Plant and Equipment available for this Contract:

Quantity	Size, Description, Capacity, etc.

2. Major Plant and Equipment that will be acquired for this contract if my/our tender is accepted:

Quantity	Size, Description, Capacity, etc.

Signature of Tenderer

Date

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PROPOSED SUB-CONTRACTORS

The tenderer shall list below any subcontractors he intends to employ to carry out part(s) of the Works.

The acceptance of this tender shall not be construed as being approval of all or any of the listed subcontractors. Should any or all of the subcontractors be not approved subsequent to the acceptance of the tender, it shall in no way invalidate this tender, and the tendered unit rates for the various items of work shall remain final and binding in the event of a subcontractor not listed below being approved by the Employer.

Company	Portion of Contract	Approx. Value

Signature of Tenderer _____

Date _____

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SITE INSPECTION CERTIFICATE

As required by Clause 2.7 of the Tender Data, I/we certify that I/we have visited the site of the Works and attended the site visit and clarification meeting on the date certified below.

I/we further certify that I am / we are satisfied with the description of the Work and the explanations given by the Engineer at the site visit and clarification meeting.

Signature of Tenderer

Date

Site Visit

This will certify that _____

representing _____

attended a Site Inspection for this Contract on _____ 20_____

For the Engineer (signed)

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

AUTHORITY OF SIGNATORY

With reference to Clause 2.13.4 of the Tender Data, I/we herewith certify that this tender is submitted by : *(Mark applicable block)*

a company, and attach hereto a certified copy of the required resolution of the Board of Directors

☐

a partnership, and attach hereto a certified copy of the required resolution by all partners

☐

a close corporation, and attach hereto a certified copy of the required resolution of the Board of Officials

☐

a one-man business, and attach hereto certified proof that I am the sole owner of the business submitting this tender

☐

a joint venture, and attach hereto

☐

- an notarially certified copy of the original document under which the joint venture was constituted; and
- certified authorisation by the participating members of the undersigned to submit tenders and conclude contracts on behalf of the joint venture

Signature of Tenderer _____

Date _____

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

RECORD OF ADDENDA TO TENDER DOCUMENTS

We confirm that the following communications received from the Employer before the submission of this tender offer, amending the tender documents, have been taken into account in this tender offer:

	Date	Title or Details
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		

Attach additional pages if more space is required.

Signature of Tenderer _____

Date _____

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

COMPULSORY ENTERPRISE QUESTIONNAIRE

The following particulars must be furnished. In the case of a joint venture, separate enterprise questionnaires in respect of each partner must be completed and submitted.

Section 1: Name of enterprise

Section 2: VAT registration number, if any

Section 3: CIDB registration number, if any

Section 4: Particulars of sole proprietors and partners in partnerships

Name	Identity Number	Personal Income tax number*

*Complete only if sole proprietor or partnership and attach separate page if more than 3 partners.

Section 5: Particulars of companies and close corporations

Company registration number :

Close corporation number :

Tax reference number :

Section 6: Record in the service of the state

Indicate by marking the relevant boxes with a cross, if any sole proprietor, partner in a partnership or director, manager, principal shareholder or stakeholder in a company or close corporation is currently or has been within the last 12 months in service of any of the following:

- | | |
|---|--|
| ☐ a member of any municipal council | ☐ an employee of any provincial department, national or provincial public entity or constitutional institution within the meaning of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999, (Act 1 of 1999) |
| ☐ a member of any provincial legislature | ☐ a member of an accounting authority of any national or provincial public entity |
| ☐ a member of the National Assembly or the National | ☐ an employee of Parliament or a provincial legislature |
| ☐ a member of the board of directors of any municipal entity | |
| ☐ an official of any municipality or municipal entity | |

If any of the above boxes are marked, disclose the following:

Name and sole proprietor, partner, director, manager, principal shareholder or stakeholder	Name and institution, public office, board or organ of state and position held	Status of service (tick appropriate column)	
		Current	Within last 12 months

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Insert separate page if necessary

Section 7: Record of spouses, children and parents in the service of the state

Indicate by marking the relevant boxes with a cross, if any sole proprietor, partner in a partnership or director, manager, principal shareholder or stakeholder in a company or close corporation is currently or has been within the last 12 months in service of any of the following:

- | | |
|---|--|
| ☐ a member of any municipal council | ☐ an employee of any provincial department, national or provincial public entity or constitutional institution within the meaning of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999, (Act 1 of 1999) |
| ☐ a member of any provincial legislature | ☐ a member of an accounting authority of any national or provincial public entity |
| ☐ a member of the National Assembly or the National | ☐ an employee of Parliament or a provincial legislature |
| ☐ a member of the board of directors of any municipal entity | |
| ☐ an official of any municipality or municipal entity | |

Name of spouse, child or parent	Name and institution, public office, board or organ of state and position held	Status of service (tick appropriate column)	
		Current	Within last 12 months

*Insert separate page if necessary

The undersigned, who warrants that he/she is duly authorised to do so on behalf of the enterprise:

- Authorizes the Employer to obtain a tax clearance certificate from the South African Revenue Services that my/our tax matters are in order;
- Confirms that neither the name of the enterprise or the name of any partner, manager, director or other person, who wholly or partly exercises, or may exercise, control over the enterprise appears on the Register of Tender Defaulters established in terms of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act of 2004;
- Confirms that no partner, member, director or other person, who wholly or partly exercises, or may exercise, control over the enterprise appears, has within the last five years been convicted of fraud and

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

corruption;

- iv) Confirms that I/we are not associated, linked or involved with any other tendering entities submitting tender offers and have no other relationship with any of the tenderers or those responsible for compiling the scope of work that could cause or be interpreted as a conflict of interest; and
- v) Confirms that the contents of this questionnaire are within my personal knowledge and are to the best of my belief true and correct.

Signature of Tenderer : _____

Date : _____

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

TAX CLEARANCE REQUIREMENTS

IT IS A CONDITION OF BIDDING THAT:

1. The taxes of the successful Bidder **must** be in order, or that satisfactory arrangements have been made with the Receiver of Revenue to meet his/her tax obligations.
2. The form "Application for Tax Clearance Certificate (in respect of Bidders)", must be completed in all respects and submitted to the Receiver of Revenue where the Bidder is registered for tax purposes. The Receiver of Revenue will then furnish the Bidder with a Tax Clearance Certificate that will be valid for a period of 6 (six) months from the date of issue. This Tax Clearance Certificate must be submitted in the original, together with the bid and attached to Schedule 15. Failure to submit the **original** and valid Tax Clearance Certificate **will** invalidate the bid.
3. In bids where Consortia / Joint Ventures / Sub-Contractors are involved, each party must submit a separate Tax Clearance Certificate. Copies of the "Application for Tax Clearance Certificates" are available at any Receiver's Office.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

BIDDER'S DISCLOSURE

1. PURPOSE OF THE FORM

- 1.1 Any person (natural or juristic) may make an offer or offers in terms of this invitation to bid. In line with the principles of transparency, accountability, impartiality, and ethics as enshrined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Constitution), and further expressed in the various applicable legislation, it is required for the bidder to make this declaration in respect of the details required hereunder.
- 1.2 If a person is listed in the Register for Tender Defaulters and/or the List of Restricted Suppliers, that person will automatically be disqualified from the bid process.

2. DECLARATION ON EMPLOYMENT BY ORGAN OF STATE

- 2.1 Is the bidder, or any of the directors / trustees / shareholders / members / partners of the bidder employed by an organ of state, as defined in section 239 of the Constitution? **YES/NO**
- 2.2 If YES, furnish particulars of the names, individual identity numbers, in the table below:

Full Name	Identity Number	Name of organ of state

- 2.3 Do you, or any person connected with the bidder, have a relationship with any person who is employed by the procuring institution? **YES/NO**

1. the power, by one person or a group of persons holding the majority of the equity of an enterprise, alternatively, the person/s having the deciding vote or power to influence or to direct the course and decisions of the enterprise.

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------	---------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------

SBD4

2.3.1 If so, furnish particulars:

.....
.....
.....

2.4 Does the bidder or any of its directors/trustees/shareholders members/partners or any person having a controlling interest in the enterprise have any interest in any other related enterprise, whether or not they are bidding for this contract? **YES/NO**

2.4.1 If so, indicate all companies registered in the CSD in the table below:

Supplier registration number (MAAA)	Status (active/inactive/deleted)

Failure to disclose all CSD-registered active companies linked to all Directors will lead to disqualification.

3 GENERAL DECLARATION

I,, the undersigned, in submitting the accompanying bid, do hereby make the following statements that I certify to be true and complete in every respect:

- 3.1 I have read and I understand the contents of this disclosure.
- 3.2 I understand that the accompanying bid will be disqualified if this disclosure is found to be false.
- 3.3 The bidder has arrived at the accompanying bid independently from, and without consultation, communication, agreement or arrangement with any competitor.
- 3.4 In addition, there have been no consultations, communications, agreements or arrangements with any competitor regarding the quality, quantity, specifications, prices, including methods, factors or formulas used to calculate prices, market allocation, the intention or decision to submit or not to submit the bid, bidding with the intention not to win the bid and conditions or delivery particulars of the products or services to which this bid invitation relates.
- 3.5 The terms of the accompanying bid have not been, and will not be, disclosed by the bidder, directly or indirectly, to any competitor, prior to the date and time of the official bid opening or of the awarding of the contract.

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

- 3.6 There have been no consultations, communications, agreements or arrangements made by the bidder with any official of the procuring institution in relation to this procurement process prior to and during the bidding process except to provide clarification on the bid submitted where so required by the institution; and the bidder was not involved in the drafting of the specifications or terms of reference for this bid.
- 3.7 I am aware that, in addition and without prejudice to any other remedy provided to combat any restrictive practices related to bids and contracts, bids that are suspicious will be reported to the Competition Commission for investigation and possible imposition of administrative penalties in terms of section 59 of the Competition Act, 1998 (Act No. 89 of 1998) and or may be referred to law enforcement agencies for criminal investigation and or may be restricted from conducting business with the state for a period not exceeding 10 years in terms of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act No. 12 of 2004) or any other applicable legislation.

I CERTIFY THAT THE ABOVE IS CORRECT.

I ACCEPT THAT THE PROCURING INSTITUTION MAY REJECT THE BID OR TAKE APPROPRIATE ACTION AGAINST ME IF THIS DECLARATION IS FALSE.

.....
Signature

.....
Date

.....
Designation

.....
Name of bidder

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

**PREFERENCE POINTS CLAIM FORM IN TERMS OF THE PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT
REGULATIONS 2022**

SBD 6.1

This preference form must form part of all tenders invited. It contains general information and serves as a claim form for preference points for specific goals.

NB: BEFORE COMPLETING THIS FORM, TENDERERS MUST STUDY THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, DEFINITIONS AND DIRECTIVES APPLICABLE IN RESPECT OF THE TENDER AND PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT REGULATIONS, 2022

1. GENERAL CONDITIONS

1.1 The following preference point systems are applicable to invitations to tender:

- the 80/20 system for requirements with a Rand value of up to R50 000 000 (all applicable taxes included); and
- the 90/10 system for requirements with a Rand value above R50 000 000 (all applicable taxes included).

1.2 To be completed by the organ of state

(delete whichever is not applicable for this tender).

- a) The applicable preference point system for this tender is the 90/10 preference point system.
- b) The applicable preference point system for this tender is the 80/20 preference point system.
- c) Either the 90/10 or 80/20 preference point system will be applicable in this tender. The lowest/highest acceptable tender will be used to determine the accurate system once tenders are received.

1.3 Points for this tender (even in the case of a tender for income-generating contracts) shall be awarded for:

- (a) Price; and
- (b) Specific Goals.

1.4 To be completed by the organ of state:

The maximum points for this tender are allocated as follows:

	POINTS
PRICE	
SPECIFIC GOALS	
Total points for Price and SPECIFIC GOALS	100

1.5 Failure on the part of a tenderer to submit proof or documentation required in terms of this tender to claim points for specific goals with the tender, will be interpreted to mean that preference points for specific goals are not claimed.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- 1.6** The organ of state reserves the right to require of a tenderer, either before a tender is adjudicated or at any time subsequently, to substantiate any claim in regard to preferences, in any manner required by the organ of state.

2. DEFINITIONS

- (a) **"tender"** means a written offer in the form determined by an organ of state in response to an invitation to provide goods or services through price quotations, competitive tendering process or any other method envisaged in legislation;
- (b) **"price"** means an amount of money tendered for goods or services, and includes all applicable taxes less all unconditional discounts;
- (c) **"rand value"** means the total estimated value of a contract in Rand, calculated at the time of bid invitation, and includes all applicable taxes;
- (d) **"tender for income-generating contracts"** means a written offer in the form determined by an organ of state in response to an invitation for the origination of income-generating contracts through any method envisaged in legislation that will result in a legal agreement between the organ of state and a third party that produces revenue for the organ of state, and includes, but is not limited to, leasing and disposal of assets and concession contracts, excluding direct sales and disposal of assets through public auctions; and
- (e) **"the Act"** means the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act No. 5 of 2000).

3. FORMULAE FOR PROCUREMENT OF GOODS AND SERVICES

3.1. POINTS AWARDED FOR PRICE

3.1.1 THE 80/20 OR 90/10 PREFERENCE POINT SYSTEMS

A maximum of 80 or 90 points is allocated for price on the following basis:

80/20 or 90/10

$$Ps = 80 \left(1 - \frac{Pt - P_{min}}{P_{min}} \right) \text{ or } Ps = 90 \left(1 - \frac{Pt - P_{min}}{P_{min}} \right)$$

Where

Ps = Points scored for price of tender under consideration

Pt = Price of tender under consideration

Pmin = Price of lowest acceptable tender

3.2. FORMULAE FOR DISPOSAL OR LEASING OF STATE ASSETS AND INCOME GENERATING PROCUREMENT

3.2.1. POINTS AWARDED FOR PRICE

A maximum of 80 or 90 points is allocated for price on the following basis:

80/20 or 90/10

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

$$P_s - 80 \left(1 + \frac{P_t - P_{max}}{P_{max}} \right) \quad \text{or} \quad P_s - 90 \left(1 + \frac{P_t - P_{max}}{P_{max}} \right)$$

Where

Ps = Points scored for price of tender under consideration
Pt = Price of tender under consideration
Pmax = Price of highest acceptable tender

4.POINTS AWARDED FOR SPECIFIC GOALS

- 4.1. In terms of Regulation 4(2); 5(2); 6(2) and 7(2) of the Preferential Procurement Regulations, preference points must be awarded for specific goals stated in the tender. For the purposes of this tender the tenderer will be allocated points based on the goals stated in table 1 below as may be supported by proof/ documentation stated in the conditions of this tender:
- 4.2. In cases where organs of state intend to use Regulation 3(2) of the Regulations, which states that, if it is unclear whether the 80/20 or 90/10 preference point system applies, an organ of state must, in the tender documents, stipulate in the case of—
 - a) an invitation for tender for income-generating contracts, that either the 80/20 or 90/10 preference point system will apply and that the highest acceptable tender will be used to determine the applicable preference point system; or
 - b) any other invitation for tender, that either the 80/20 or 90/10 preference point system will apply and that the lowest acceptable tender will be used to determine the applicable preference point system, then the organ of state must indicate the points allocated for specific goals for both the 90/10 and 80/20 preference point system.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Table 1: Specific goals for the tender and points claimed are indicated per the table below.

(Note to organs of state: Where either the 90/10 or 80/20 preference point system is applicable, corresponding points must also be indicated as such.)

Note to tenderers: The tenderer must indicate how they claim points for each preference point system.)

The specific goals allocated points in terms of this tender	Number of points allocated (90/10 system) To be completed by the organ of state)	Number of points allocated (80/20 system) To be completed by the organ of state)	Number of points claimed (90/10 system) To be completed by the tenderer)	Number of points claimed (80/20 system) To be completed by the tenderer)
100% or more Women or Youth owned company	5	10		
Less than 100% Women or Youth owned company	2	5		
100% Black owned Company	5	10		
Less than 100% Black owned Company	2	5		
100% People living with disability	5	10		
Locally owned companies	2	5		

DECLARATION WITH REGARD TO COMPANY/FIRM

4.3. Name of company/firm.....

4.4. Company registration number:

4.5. TYPE OF COMPANY/ FIRM

- ☐ Partnership/Joint Venture / Consortium
- ☐ One-person business/sole propriety
- ☐ Close corporation
- ☐ Public Company
- ☐ Personal Liability Company
- ☐ (Pty) Limited
- ☐ Non-Profit Company
- ☐ State Owned Company

[Tick applicable box]

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

4.6. I, the undersigned, who is duly authorised to do so on behalf of the company/firm, certify that the points claimed, based on the specific goals as advised in the tender, qualifies the company/ firm for the preference(s) shown and I acknowledge that:

- i) The information furnished is true and correct;
- ii) The preference points claimed are in accordance with the General Conditions as indicated in paragraph 1 of this form;
- iii) In the event of a contract being awarded as a result of points claimed as shown in paragraphs 1.4 and 4.2, the contractor may be required to furnish documentary proof to the satisfaction of the organ of state that the claims are correct;
- iv) If the specific goals have been claimed or obtained on a fraudulent basis or any of the conditions of contract have not been fulfilled, the organ of state may, in addition to any other remedy it may have –

- (a) disqualify the person from the tendering process;
- (b) recover costs, losses or damages it has incurred or suffered as a result of that person's conduct;
- (c) cancel the contract and claim any damages which it has suffered as a result of having to make less favourable arrangements due to such cancellation;
- (d) recommend that the tenderer or contractor, its shareholders and directors, or only the shareholders and directors who acted on a fraudulent basis, be restricted from obtaining business from any organ of state for a period not exceeding 10 years, after the *audi alteram partem* (hear the other side) rule has been applied; and
- (e) forward the matter for criminal prosecution, if deemed necessary.

.....
SIGNATURE(S) OF TENDERER(S)

SURNAME AND NAME:

DATE:

ADDRESS:

.....

.....

.....

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

COGHSTA SPECIFIC GOALS

1. 80/20 preference point system

80/20 preference point system for acquisition of goods or services with Rand value equal to or below R50 million

- i. The following formula must be used to calculate the points out of 80 for price in respect of an invitation for a tender with a Rand value equal to or below R50 million, inclusive of all applicable taxes:

$$Ps = 80 \frac{(1 - Pt - P_{min})}{P_{min}}$$

Where-

- Ps = Points scored for price of tender under consideration;
Pt = Price of tender under consideration; and
Pmin = Price of lowest acceptable tender

- ii. A maximum of 20 points may be awarded to a tenderer for the specific goals specified for the tender.
- iii. The points scored for the specific goal must be added to the points scored for the price and the total must be rounded to the nearest two decimal places.
- iv. Subject to section 2(1)(f) of the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000, the contract must be awarded to the tenderer scoring the highest points.

The following table must be used to calculate the score out of 20 for specific goals:

Specific Goal	Number of Points
100% or more Women or Youth owned company	10
Less than 100% Women or Youth owned company	5
100% Black owned Company	10
Less than 100% Black owned Company	5
100% People living with disability	10
Locally owned companies	5
Maximum obtainable points	20

The following must be noted for the allocation of 20 points:

- A tenderer might be requested to submit proof of its B-BBEE status level of contributor.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- A share certificate and or CIPC information of the company might be requested to be able to verify ownership
- Any other relevant evidence can be requested from the tenderer to substantiate the claim for the 20 points from any of the above specific goals on the table.
- CSD printout must accompany all submission documents
- The above points can be increased, reduced and split to more than one specific goal, depending on the requirements of the bid and specifications, however when such is increased or reduced, the information must be published correctly to the bidder at the time of advert of tender, but total points must not exceed 20 points.
- Locality points will be allocated to any company with a valid and verifiable address in the Northern Cape, e.g. CIPC, SARS etc. A lease agreement must have substantiating legitimate evidence relating to the Northern Cape the address claimed, such as proof of rental payment and receipt of rentals by both the lessee and lessor.
- If the price offered by the tenderer scoring the highest points is not reasonable, COGHSTA must not award the contract to the tenderer
- COGHSTA may negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the highest points or **cancel** the tender
- If the tenderer does not agree to a reasonable price, negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the second highest points or cancel the tender
- If the tenderer scoring the second highest points does not agree a reasonable price, negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the third highest points or cancel the tender.
- If a reasonable price is not agreed as envisaged, COGHSTA must cancel the tender

2. 90/10 preference point system

90/10 preference point system for goods or services with Rand value above R50 million

- The following formula must be used to calculate the points out of 90 for price in respect of a tender with a Rand value above R50 million, inclusive of all applicable taxes:

$$P_s = 90 \frac{(1 - P_t - P_{\min})}{P_{\min}}$$

Where:

P_s = Points scored for price of tender under consideration;

P_t = Price of tender under consideration; and

$P_{\min}$ = Price of lowest acceptable tender.

- A maximum of 10 points may be awarded to a tenderer for the specific goals specified for the tender.
- The points scored for the specific goal must be added to the points scored for the price and the total must be rounded to the nearest two decimal places.
- Subject to section 2(1)(f) of the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000, the

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

contract must be awarded to the tenderer scoring the highest points.

The following table must be used to calculate the score out of 10 for specific goals:

Specific Goal	Number of Points
100% or more Women or Youth owned company	5
Less than 100% Women or Youth owned company	2
100% Black owned Company	5
Less than 100% Black owned Company	2
100% People living with disability	5
Locally owned companies	2
Maximum obtainable points	10

The following must be noted for the allocation of 10 points:

- A tenderer might be requested to submit proof of its B-BBEE status level of contributor.
- A share certificate and or CIPC information of the company might be requested to be able to verify ownership
- Any other relevant evidence can be requested from the tenderer to substantiate the claim for the 10 points from any of the above specific goals on the table.
- CSD printout must accompany all submission documents
- The above points can be increased, reduced and split to more than one specific goal, depending on the requirements of the bid and specifications, however when such is increased or reduced, the information must be published correctly to the bidder at the time of advert of tender, but total points must not exceed 10 points.
- Locality points will be allocated to any company with a valid and verifiable address in the Northern Cape, e.g. CIPC, SARS etc. A lease agreement must have substantiating legitimate evidence relating to the Northern Cape the address claimed, such as proof of rental payment and receipt of rentals by both the lessee and lessor
- If the price offered by the tenderer scoring the highest points is not reasonable, COGHSTA must not award the contract to the tenderer
- COGHSTA may negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the highest points or cancel the tender
- If the tenderer does not agree to a reasonable price, negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the second highest points or cancel the tender
- If the tenderer scoring the second highest points does not agree a reasonable price, negotiate a reasonable price with the tenderer scoring the third highest points or cancel the tender.
- If a reasonable price is not agreed as envisaged, COGHSTA must cancel the tender

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

CONTRACT FORM – PURCHASE OF GOODS / WORKS

SBD 7.1

THIS FORM MUST BE COMPLETED IN DUPLICATE BY BOTH THE SUCCESSFUL BIDDER (PART 1) AND THE PURCHASER (PART 2). BOTH FORMS MUST BE SIGNED IN THE ORIGINAL SO THAT THE SUCCESSFUL BIDDER AND THE PURCHASER WOULD BE IN POSSESSION OF ORIGINALLY SIGNED CONTRACTS FOR THEIR RESPECTIVE RECORDS

PART 1 (TO BE COMPLETED BY THE BIDDER)

1. I hereby undertake to supply all or any of the goods and/or works described in the attached bidding documents to (name of institution) in accordance with the requirements and specifications stipulated in bid number at the price/s quoted. My offer/s remain binding upon me and open for acceptance by the purchaser during the validity period indicated and calculated from the closing time of bid.
2. The following documents shall be deemed to form and be read and construed as part of this agreement:
 - (i) bidding documents, viz
 - Invitation to bid;
 - Tax Clearance Certificate
 - Pricing Schedule(s);
 - Technical Specification(s);
 - Specific goals in terms of the **Error! Reference source not found.**;
 - Declaration of interest;
 - Declaration of Bidder's past SCM practices;
 - Certificate of Independent Bid Determination;
 - Special Conditions of Contract;
 - (ii) General Conditions of Contract; and
 - (iii) Other (specify)
3. I confirm that I have satisfied myself as to the correctness and validity of my bid; that the tendered Remeasurable quoted cover all the goods and/or works specified in the bidding documents; that the tendered Remeasurable cover all my obligations and I accept that any mistakes regarding the tendered Remeasurable and calculations will be at my own risk.
4. I accept full responsibility for the proper execution and fulfilment of all obligations and conditions devolving on me under this agreement as the principal liable for the due fulfilment of this contract.
5. I declare that I have no participation in any collusive practices with any Bidder or any other person regarding this or any other bid.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

6. I confirm that I am duly authorised to sign this contract.

NAME (PRINT)

CAPACITY

SIGNATURE

NAME OF FIRM

DATE

WITNESSES

1.

2.

DATE:

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SBD 7.1

CONTRACT FORM – PURCHASE OF GOODS / WORKS

PART 2 (TO BE COMPLETED BY THE PURCHASER)

1. I, in my capacity as
accept your bid under Reference Number dated
for the supply of goods / works indicated hereunder and/or further specified in the annexure(s).
2. An official order indicating delivery instructions is forthcoming.
3. I undertake to make payment for the goods/works delivered in accordance with the terms and conditions of the contract, within 30 (thirty) days after receipt of an invoice accompanied by the delivery note.

ITEM NO.	PRICE (ALL APPLICABLE TAXES INCLUDED), EXCL 14% VAT	BRAND	DELIVERY PERIOD	B-BBEE STATUS LEVEL OF CONTRIBUTION	MINIMUM THRESHOLD FOR LOCAL PRODUCTION AND CONTENT (if applicable)

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

4. I confirm that I am duly authorised to sign this contract.

SIGNED AT ON

NAME (PRINT)

SIGNATURE

OFFICIAL STAMP

WITNESSES

1.

2.

DATE:

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Part C1

Agreements and Contract Data

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

AGREEMENTS AND CONTRACT DATA

CONTENTS LIST

Section	Description	Page No
C1.1	FORM OF OFFER AND ACCEPTANCE	C1.2
C1.2	CONTRACT DATA.....	C1.9
	Annexure A: Form of Guarantee	C1.25
	Annexure B: Waiver of Contractor's Lien	C1.28
	Annexure C: Written agreement in terms of the section 37(2) Agreement in terms of the OHSACT	C1.29

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C1.1

Form of Offer and Acceptance

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

FORM OF OFFER AND ACCEPTANCE

OFFER

The Employer, identified in the Acceptance signature block, has solicited offers to enter into a contract in respect of the following works:

.....

The Tenderer, identified in the Offer signature block, has examined the documents listed in the Tender Data and addenda thereto as listed in the Tender Schedules, and by submitting this Offer has accepted the Conditions of Tender.

By the representative of the Tenderer, deemed to be duly authorised, signing this part of this Form of Offer and Acceptance, the Tenderer offers to perform all of the obligations and liabilities of the Contractor under the Contract including compliance with all its terms and conditions according to their true intent and meaning for an amount to be determined in accordance with the Conditions of Contract identified in the Contract Data.

The offered Total of the Prices inclusive of Value Added Tax is

.....

..... Rand (in words); R (in figures)

This Offer may be accepted by the Employer by signing the Acceptance part of this Form of Offer and Acceptance and returning one copy of this document to the Tenderer before the end of the period of

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

validity stated in the Tender Data, whereupon the Tenderer becomes the party named as the Contractor in the Conditions of Contract identified in the Contract Data.

For the Tenderer:

Signature(s) _____

Name(s) _____

Capacity _____

Name and address of organisation:

Signature and Names of witnesses:

Signatures _____

Names _____

Date: _____

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

ACCEPTANCE

By signing this part of this Form of Offer and Acceptance, the Employer identified below accepts the Tenderer's Offer. In consideration thereof, the Employer shall pay the Contractor the amount due in accordance with the, Conditions of Contract identified in the Contract Data. Acceptance of the Tenderer's Offer shall form an agreement, between the Employer and the Tenderer upon the terms and conditions contained in this Agreement and in the Contract that is the subject of this Agreement.

The terms of the contract, are contained in

Part C1	Agreements and Contract Data, (which includes this agreement)
Part C2	Pricing Data
Part C3	Scope of Work
Part C4	Site Information

and drawings and documents or parts thereof, which may be incorporated by reference into Parts C1 to C4 above.

Deviations from and amendments to the documents listed in the Tender Data and any addenda thereto listed in the Tender Schedules as well as any changes to the terms of the Offer agreed by the Tenderer and the Employer during this process of Offer and Acceptance, are contained in the Schedule of Deviations attached to and forming part of this Agreement. No amendments to or deviations from said documents are valid unless contained in this Schedule, which must be duly signed by the authorised representative(s) of both parties.

The Tenderer shall within two weeks after receiving a completed copy of this Agreement, including the Schedule of Deviations (if any), contact the Employer's agent (whose details are given in the Contract Data) to arrange the delivery of any bonds, guarantees, proof of insurance and any other documentation to be provided in terms of the Conditions of Contract identified in the Contract Data, or just after the date this Agreement comes into effect. Failure to fulfil any of these obligations in accordance with those terms shall constitute a repudiation of this Agreement.

Notwithstanding anything contained herein, this Agreement comes into effect on the date when the Tenderer receives one fully completed original copy of this document, including the Schedule of Deviations (if any). Unless the Tenderer (now Contractor) within five days of the date of such receipt notifies the Employer in writing of any reason why he cannot accept the contents of this Agreement, this Agreement shall constitute a binding contract between the parties.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

For the Employer:

Signature(s) _____

Name(s) _____

Capacity _____

Name and address of organisation:

Signature and Names of witnesses:

Signatures _____

Names _____

Date: _____

--

Contractor

--

Witness 1

--

Witness 2

--

Employer

--

Witness 1

--

Witness 2

SCHEDULE OF DEVIATIONS

Notes :

1. The extent of deviations from the tender documents issued by the Employer prior to the tender closing date is limited to those permitted in terms of the Conditions of Tender;
2. A Tenderer's covering letter shall not be included in the final contract document. Should any matter in such letter, which constitutes a deviation as aforesaid become the subject of agreements reached during the process of offer and acceptance, the outcome of such agreement shall be recorded here;
3. Any other matter arising from the process of offer and acceptance either as a confirmation, clarification or change to the tender documents and which it is agreed by the Parties becomes an obligation of the contract shall also be recorded here;
4. Any change or addition to the tender documents arising from the above agreements and recorded here, shall also be incorporated into the final draft of the Contract.

1. **Subject**

Details.....

2. **Subject**

Details.....

3. **Subject**

Details.....

4. **Subject**

Details.....

By the duly authorised representatives signing this Schedule of Deviations, the Employer and the Tenderer agree to and accept the foregoing Schedule of Deviations as the only deviations from and amendments to the documents listed in the Tender Data and addenda thereto as listed in the Tender Schedules, as well as any confirmation, clarification or change to the terms of the offer agreed by the Tenderer and the Employer during this process of offer and acceptance.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

It is expressly agreed that no other matter whether in writing, oral communication or implied during the period between the issue of the tender documents and the receipt by the Tenderer of a completed signed copy of this Agreement shall have any meaning or effect in the contract between the parties arising from this Agreement.

For the Tenderer:

Signature(s) _____

Name(s) _____

Capacity _____

Name and address of organisation:

Signature and Names of witnesses:

Signatures _____

Names _____

Date: _____

--

Contractor

--

Witness 1

--

Witness 2

--

Employer

--

Witness 1

--

Witness 2

For the Employer:

Signature(s) _____

Name(s) _____

Capacity _____

Name and address of organisation:

Signature and Names of witnesses:

Signatures _____

Names _____

Date: _____

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

CONFIRMATION OF RECIEPT

The Tenderer, (now Contractor), identified in the Offer part of this Agreement hereby confirms receipt from the Employer, identified in the Acceptance part of this Agreement, of one fully completed original copy of this agreement, including the Schedule of Deviations (if any) today:

The (day)

of (month)

20 (year)

For the Contractor:

Signature(s) _____

Name(s) _____

Capacity _____

Signature and Names of witnesses:

Signatures _____

Names _____

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Part C1 Conditions of Contract

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

AGREEMENTS AND CONTRACT DATA

CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT

The JBCC® Principal Building Agreement - Edition 6.2 (May 2018) is applicable to this contract.

The Principal Building Agreement is not bound into this document, but is available at the Contractor's expense from the JBCC constituents. Contact the JBCC at info@jbcc.co.za for information.

The following additional documents form part of the suite of contract agreements:

- The JBCC® Principal Building Agreement - Contract Data that incorporates specific employer and contractor requirements;
- The JBCC® General Preliminaries that generally covers all aspects of preliminaries for most types of projects; and
- A comprehensive set of certificate forms and support documents for use in the administration of the agreement

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C1.2 Contract Data

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2



PRINCIPAL BUILDING AGREEMENT: CONTRACT DATA

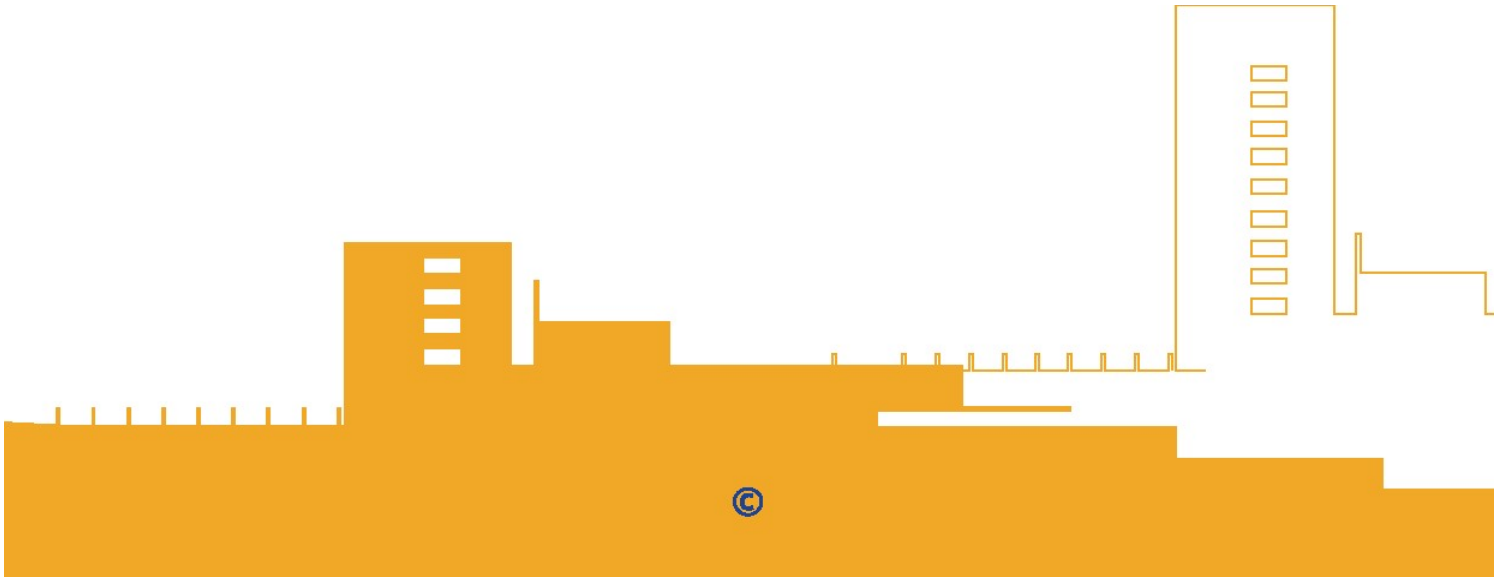
Project: Lerato Park Integrated Housing Development, The Construction of Twelve (12) Military Veteran Houses in Lerato Park

Employer: The Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs ("COGHSTA")

Contractor:

Contract Date:

File Code:



Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

The Joint Building Contracts Committee® - NPC

CONTRACT DATA
Principal Building Agreement
Edition 6.2 - May 2018

JBCC®

The Joint Building Contracts Committee® NPC (JBCC®) is representative of building owners and developers, professional consultants and general and specialist contractors who contribute their knowledge and experience to the compilation of the JBCC® documents. The JBCC® documents portray the consensus view of the constituent members and are published in the interests of standardisation and good practice with an equitable distribution of contractual risk

Application of JBCC® agreements

The definitions contained in the JBCC® Principal Building Agreement apply to this document. A word or phrase in bold type in the text has the same meaning assigned to it in the definitions of such agreement. Where a word or phrase is not in bold type it has the meaning consistent with the context of its use

This contract data contains unique requirements applicable to the project and variables referred to in the JBCC® Principal Building Agreement and the JBCC® General Preliminaries. The information provided in this document by the principal agent is complete and accurate at the time of calling for tenders. Where additional information becomes available, all tenderers will be informed in writing. Reference to clause numbers in the JBCC® Principal Building Agreement are shown in [square brackets] in this contract data eg [3.2.1]. Spaces requiring information must be filled in, or marked as 'not applicable' but not left blank

This contract data, when completed and submitted by the contractor, becomes the form of tender. Where the contractor is appointed, the contract documents comprise the signed JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, this completed contract data, the priced document, drawings and other listed documents

Warning!

The JBCC® Principal Building Agreement Edition 6.2 has been coordinated with the JBCC® Nominated/Selected Subcontract Agreement Edition 6.2, the JBCC® General Preliminaries and the JBCC® certificate forms and support documents. Forms from previous editions are not compatible with the JBCC® Principal Building Agreement Edition 6.2

Persons entering into or preparing contracts using the JBCC® suite of contract agreements and support documents are warned of the dangers inherent in modifying any part of it

Experience has shown that changes drafted by others, including members of the building professions, often have unintended results that may be prejudicial to either, or both, parties

Disclaimer

While the JBCC® aims to ensure that its publications represent best practice it does not accept or assume any liability or responsibility for any events or consequences which derive from the use of JBCC® documents

Copyright reserved

The name 'The Joint Building Contracts Committee® NPC', the abbreviation JBCC®, the electronic version e-JBCC® and the JBCC® logo are registered trademarks. The JBCC® claims authorship of this work. All rights are reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, scanning, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission in writing of the JBCC®. Unauthorised reproduction of the work is an infringement of the copyright. Judicial proceedings can and will be instituted to obtain relief and recovery of damages

©Copyright reserved: JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 - May 2018 Contract Data
This page does *not* form part of the JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, Edition - 6.2 May 2018 Contract Data

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

A PROJECT INFORMATION

A 1.0 Works [1.1]

Project name	Lerato Park Integrated Housing Development, The Construction of Twelve (12) Military Veteran Houses in Lerato Park
Reference number	NC/17/2026
Works description	Lerato Park Integrated Housing Development: The Construction of Twelve (12) Military Veteran Houses in Lerato Park (refer to Section C3.1)

A 2.0 Site [1.1]

Erf / stand number	As per locality plan and layout plan (refer to Section C3.1)
Township / Suburb	Kimberley, Roodepan
Site address	Lerato Park Integrated Housing Development coordinates: 28°40'24.34"S 24°42'54.48"E
Local authority	Sol Plaatje Local Municipality

A 3.0 Employer [1.1]

Name	The Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (COGHSTA)		
Legal entity of above		Contact person	Karel Visagie
Business registration number		Telephone number	+27(0)53 830 9400
VAT/GST number		Mobile number	
Country	South Africa	E-mail	kvisagie@nccoghsta.gov.za
Postal address	Private Bag X5005, Kimberley		
		Postal code	8300
Physical address	Larry Moleko Louw Building, 9 Cecil Sussman Road, Kimberley		
		Postal code	8301

A 4.0 Principal agent [1.1]

Name	Bigen Africa Services (Pty) Ltd ("Bigen")		
Legal entity of above		Contact person	Marthinus Pretorius
Practice number		Telephone number	+27(0)53 831 2935
		Mobile number	+27(0)82 557 3964
Country	South Africa	E-mail	Marthinus.Pretorius@bigen-group.com
Postal address	19 Schmidtdrift Road, Rhodesdene, Kimberley		
		Postal code	8301
Physical address	19 Schmidtdrift Road, Rhodesdene, Kimberley		
		Postal code	8301

©Copyright reserved: JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 - May 2018 Contract Data

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

A 5.0 Agent [1.1; 6.2]

Discipline		Structural Engineer	
Name	Bigen Africa Services (Pty) Ltd ("Bigen")		
Legal entity of above	Contact person	Daneel Strydom	
Practice number	Telephone number	+27(0)53 831 2935	
	Mobile number		
Country	South Africa	E-mail	Daneel.Strydom@bigengroup.com
Postal address	19 Schmidtdrift Road, Rhodesdene, Kimberley		
	Postal code	8301	
Physical address	19 Schmidtdrift Road, Rhodesdene, Kimberley		
	Postal code	8301	

A 6.0 Agent [1.1; 6.2]

Discipline		Quantity Surveyor	
Name	Bigen Africa Services (Pty) Ltd ("Bigen")		
Legal entity of above	Contact person	Stuart Graham	
Practice number	Telephone number	+27(0)53 831 2935	
	Mobile number		
Country	South Africa	E-mail	Stuart.Graham@bigengroup.com
Postal address	19 Schmidtdrift Road, Rhodesdene, Kimberley		
	Postal code	8301	
Physical address	19 Schmidtdrift Road, Rhodesdene, Kimberley		
	Postal code	8301	

A 7.0 Agent [1.1; 6.2]

Discipline		Electrical Engineer	
Name	Bigen Africa Services (Pty) Ltd ("Bigen")		
Legal entity of above	Contact person	Mark Lowe	
Practice number	Telephone number	+27(0)53 831 2935	
	Mobile number		
Country	South Africa	E-mail	Mark.Lowe@bigengroup.com
Postal address	19 Schmidtdrift Road, Rhodesdene, Kimberley		
	Postal code	8301	
Physical address	19 Schmidtdrift Road, Rhodesdene, Kimberley		
	Postal code	8301	

A 8.0 Agent [1.1; 6.2]

Discipline			
Name			
Legal entity of above	Contact person		
Practice number	Telephone number		
	Mobile number		
Country	E-mail		
Postal address	Postal code		
Physical address	Postal code		

©Copyright reserved: JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 - May 2018 Contract Data

--

Contractor

--

Witness 1

--

Witness 2

--

Employer

--

Witness 1

--

Witness 2

A 9.0 Agent [1.1; 6.2]

Discipline			
Name			
Legal entity of above		Contact person	
Practice number		Telephone number	
		Mobile number	
Country		E-mail	
Postal address			
		Postal code	
Physical address			
		Postal code	

A 10.0 Agent [1.1; 6.2]

Discipline			
Name			
Legal entity of above		Contact person	
Practice number		Telephone number	
		Mobile number	
Country		E-mail	
Postal address			
		Postal code	
Physical address			
		Postal code	

A 11.0 Agent [1.1; 6.2]

Discipline			
Name			
Legal entity of above		Contact person	
Practice number		Telephone number	
		Mobile number	
Country		E-mail	
Postal address			
		Postal code	
Physical address			
		Postal code	

©Copyright reserved: JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 - May 2018

--

Contractor

--

Witness 1

--

Witness 2

--

Employer

--

Witness 1

--

Witness 2

B CONTRACT INFORMATION

B 1.0 Definitions [1.1]

Bills of quantities: System/Method of measurement	Standard System of Measuring Building Work, (6th Edition – 2 nd revision), as revised in 2013
---	--

B 2.0 Law, regulations and notices [2.0]

Law applicable to the works, state country [2.1]	South Africa
--	--------------

B 3.0 Offer and acceptance [3.0]

Currency applicable to this agreement [3.2]	South African Rand
--	--------------------

B 4.0 Documents [5.0]

The original signed agreement is to be held by the principal agent [5.2], if not, indicate by whom	Employer
Number of copies of construction information issued to the contractor at no cost [5.6]	1

Documents comprising the agreement	Page numbers
The JBCC ® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 May 2018	1 to 30
The JBCC ® Principal Building Agreement- Contract Data, Edition 6.2 May 2018	1 to 19
The JBCC ® General Preliminaries for use with the JBCC ® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 May 2018	1 to 7
Volume 1 - Part T1 Tendering procedures	
Volume 1 - Part T2 Returnable documents	
Volume 1 - Part C1 Agreements and contract data	
Volume 1 - Part C2 Pricing Data	
Volume 1 - Part C3 Scope of work	
Volume 1 - Part C4 Site Information	

Contract drawings — description	Number	Revision	Date
Refer to Volume 2 – All drawings incorporated into the tender document			

©Copyright reserved: JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 - May 2018 Contract Data

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

B 5.0 Employer's agents [6.0]

Authority is delegated to the following agents to issue contract instructions and perform duties for specific aspects of the works [6.2]
None

Principal agent's and agents' interest or involvement in the works other than a professional interest [6.3]
Bigen Africa Services (Pty) Ltd ("Bigen") acting as Development Agent on behalf of the Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs

B 6.0 Insurances [10.0]

Insurances by Employer: No		Amount including tax	Deductible amount including tax
Contract works insurance:			
	New works [10.1.1] (contract sum or amount)		
or	Works with practical completion in sections [10.2] (contract sum or amount)		
or	Works with alterations and additions [10.3] (reinstatement value of existing structures with or including new works)		
	Direct contractors [10.1.1; 10.2] where applicable, to be included in the contract works insurance		
	Free issue [10.1.1; 10.2] where applicable, to be included in the contract works insurance		
	Escalation, professional fees and reinstatement costs if not included above		
Total of the above contract works insurance amount			
Supplementary insurance [10.1.2; 10.2]			
Public liability insurance [10.1.3; 10.2]			
Removal of lateral support insurance [10.1.4; 10.2]			
Other insurances [10.1.5]			
Yes/no?	Yes	If yes, description 1	
SASRIA, if not already covered in [10.1.2; 10.2]" above			
Yes/no?		If yes, description 2	

Copyright reserved: JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 - May 2018 Contract Data

--

Contractor

--

Witness 1

--

Witness 2

--

Employer

--

Witness 1

--

Witness 2

and/or

Insurances by contractor: Yes			Amount including tax	Deductible amount including tax
Contract works insurance:				
	New works [10.1.1] (contract sum or amount)			
or	Works with practical completion in sections [10.2] (contract sum or amount)		Contract sum + 30%	
or	Works with alterations and additions [10.3] (reinstatement value of existing structures with or Direct contractors [10.1.1; 10.2] where applicable, to be included in the contract works insurance Free issue [10.1.1; 10.2] where applicable, to be included in the contract works insurance Escalation, professional fees and reinstatement costs if not included above			
Total of the above contract works insurance amount			Contract sum + 30%	
Supplementary insurance [10.1.2]			Contract sum + 30%	
Public liability insurance [10.1.3]			R10 million per event	
Removal of lateral support insurance [10.1.4]			Not applicable	
Other insurances [10.1.5]:				
Yes/no?	Yes	If yes, description 1	Contract sum + 30%	
SASRIA, if not already included in [10.1.2; 10.2]" above				
Yes/no?		If yes, description 2		

B 7.0 Obligations of the employer [12.1]

Existing premises will be in use and occupied [12.1.2]		Yes/no?	No
If yes, description			
Restriction of working hours [12.1.2]		Yes/no?	Yes
If yes, description	7:00am to 17:00pm		
Natural features and known services to be preserved by the contractor [12.1.3]		Yes/no?	No
If yes, description			
Restrictions to the site or areas that the contractor may not occupy [12.1.4]		Yes/no?	Yes
If yes, description	The contractor is limited to the boundaries of each individual stand. No works may be performed in the road servitude. The access roads shall be clear at all times to allow the inhabitants within the neighbouring area to have free access.		
Supply of free issue [12.1 10]		Yes/no?	No
If yes, description			

©Copyright reserved: JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 - May 2018 Contract Data

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

B 8.0 Nominated subcontractors [14.0]

Specialisation 1	N/A
Specialisation 2	
Specialisation 3	
Specialisation 4	
Specialisation 5	

B 9.0 Direct contractors [16.0]

Extent of work [12.1.11]	N/A
Extent of work [12.1.11]	
Extent of work [12.1.11]	
Extent of work [12.1.11]	
Extent of work [12.1.11]	

B 10.0 Description of sections [20.1]

Section 1	12 Houses as detailed on the site layout plan
Section	
Section	
Section	
Section	
Section	
Section	
Section	

B 11.0 Possession of site [12.1.5], practical completion [19.0;20.0] and penalties [24.0]

Practical completion for the works as a whole	Intended date of possession of the site [12.1.5]	Period for inspection by the principal agent [19.3]	Date for practical completion [12.2.7; 24.1]	Penalty [24.1]
	Date	working days	Date	Penalty amount per calendar day

©Copyright reserved: JBCC® Principal Building Agreement Edition 6.2 - May 2018 Contract Data

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

or where **sections** are applicable

Practical completion of a section of the works	Intended date of possession of a section [12.1.5] Refer B15.0 Applicable to [12.1.5; 12.2.22]	Period for inspection by the principal agent [19.3]	The date for practical completion shall be the period as indicated below from the date of possession of the site by the contractor [12.2.7; 24.1]	Penalty [24.1] Penalties shall be cumulative
	Date	working days	Working days	Penalty amount per calendar day
Section 1		3 working days per an individual section	150	R 500
Section				
Section				
Section				
Section				
Section				
Section				
Section				
Remainder of the works				

Criteria to achieve **practical completion** not covered in the definition of **practical completion**

Sectional Practical Completion on the individual houses shall only be achieved once the prescribed scope of work for each individual house has been completed to a quality approved standard.

The possession of site for each house is pending the availability of sites.

B 12.0 Payment [25.0]

Date of month for issue of regular payment certificates [25.2]	Refer to B15		
Cost fluctuations [25.3.4; 26.9.5]	Yes/no?	Yes	
If yes, method to calculate	Refer to B15		

B 13.0 Dispute resolution [30.0]

Adjudication [30.6.1; 30.10] Name of nominating body	The Association of Arbitrators (Southern Africa)
Applicable rules for adjudication [30.6.2]	JBCC Adjudication Rules 2018
Arbitration [30.7.4; 30.10] Name of nominating body	The Association of Arbitrators (Southern Africa)
Applicable rules for arbitration [30.7.5]	Rules for The Conduct of Arbitrations: 2018 Edition (1 January 2018)

©Copyright reserved: JBCC⁵ Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 - May 2018 Contract Data

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

B 14.0 JBCC° General Preliminaries — selections

Provisional bills of quantities [P2.2]	Yes/no?	Yes	
Availability of construction information [P2.3]	Yes/no?	Yes	
Previous work - dimensional accuracy - details of previous contract(s) [P3.1]	N/A.		
Previous work - defects - details of previous contract(s) [P3.2]	N/A.		
Inspection of adjoining properties - details [P3.3]	The Contractor shall give all residents or other parties owning a building or top structure within an appropriate radius (not less than 50m) from any point of construction or blasting, a minimum of 48 - 72 hours written notice of his intent to execute any construction or blasting work. The Contractor shall note all aspects relevant to the condition of the affected buildings and/or top structures prior to construction or blasting, and shall acquire the signature of the owners/occupants agreeing to such conditions. Subsequent to construction or blasting, both the Contractor and the owners/occupants shall confirm the condition of the buildings and/or top structures. In the event of damage to existing buildings and/or top structures as a result of construction or blasting, remedial work shall be done to the satisfaction of the owners/occupants at the Contractor's expense. Compliance with this clause shall not relieve the Contractor of any of his responsibilities in terms of the Contract.		
Handover of site in stages - specific requirements [P4.1]			
Enclosure of the works - specific requirements [P4.2]	The contractor shall install a temporary 2.1m high fence (covered with shade netting) to separate the areas under construction and the public (on every section). This to safeguard the public. After a section is handed over to the inhabitants of the home/homes the temporary enclosure shall be moved to new sections. The enclosure of the section shall be confined to the limits of the stand and may not encroach within the road reserve. The Contractor shall ensure that the temporary enclosure is maintained at all times and in the event of damage, theft, deterioration or the like, the Contractor shall have the enclosure (at their own expense) replaced/repared. On completion of all of the works, the temporary fencing shall be spoiled off site.		
Geotechnical and other investigations - specific requirements [P4.3]	Refer to PART C4 Site Information, C4.2 Geotechnical Report for a copy of the Geotechnical Report for the proposed project area.		

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Existing premises occupied - details [P4.5]	The Contractor's attention is drawn to the fact that most portions of the Works (Top Structures) will be constructed in a rural area close to existing formal and informal/traditional structures that are occupied. The Contractor shall exercise all necessary precautions and take all necessary steps to ensure the safety and convenience of the public residing in the area. In addition, the Contractor shall provide access for traffic over and through the works, and for residents to their places of abode, all as described in the Specifications. Allowance must be made by the Contractor in his programming for any possible delays resulting from the aforesaid operational environment. The Contractor shall give residents a minimum of 72 hours written notice of his intent to start working on the respective allotments and/or close access to any of the rural residents. The Contractor shall acquire written confirmation from all owners that they are aware of any intended closures of access. No traffic access to a rural residential stand/allotment shall be closed for longer than 48 hours unless otherwise agreed to in writing with the owners concerned. Meticulous care is required to ensure: • Convenient access to all houses during all stages of construction; • Ensuring the safety of the public during all stages of construction; • Extended liaison with concerned parties, including the Project Steering Committee, local Traditional Authority, Water Supply Authority, Water Services Provider, Traffic Department, Residents and management of businesses is imperative. Where problems are identified which impact on the cost, progress/ time and quality of the project, these must be brought to the attention of the Principle Agent in writing for a decision.			
Services - known - specific requirements [P4.6]	It is not proposed or anticipated that any known existing services are to be terminated, developed or interfered with under the scope of this project. Nevertheless, notwithstanding this intention, the sites may be traversed by various existing services including water pipelines, sewer pipelines, some Eskom electrical and Telkom cables, the exact position of which are generally unknown. The Contractor will be required to so schedule and program his work that when works are disrupted due to the influence of unexpected services encountered, construction can continue in other portions of the site in order to allow the situation to be remedied by the re-siting of the proposed top structure or rerouting of the existing services as the last resort.			
Water [P8.1]	By contractor	Yes/no?	Yes	
	By employer	Yes/no?	No	
	By employer — metered	Yes/no?	No	

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Electricity [P8.2]	By contractor	Yes/no?	Yes	
	By employer	Yes/no?	No	
	By employer — metered	Yes/no?	No	
Ablution and welfare facilities [P8.3]	By contractor	Yes/no?	Yes	
	By employer	Yes/no?	No	
Communication facilities - specific requirements [P8.4]	The contractor shall make provision for unlimited cap internet access and for payment of telecommunication costs. Financial provisions for the Agent's communication requirements has been included in the Provisional Sums.			
Protection of the works - specific requirements [P11.1]	Security on constructions site From when possession of the site is given/handed over [12.2.22] to the contractor up until the issue of the Practical Completion Certificate [19.0] on the final/last section (Last house), the contractor shall at his own expense provide suitable security (24 hours a day) to safeguard the works In the event of the security being of an insufficient standard, the Principal Agent may instruct the Contractor to enhance the security. The enhancement of the security shall be for the Contractor's expense.			
Protection / isolation of existing works and works occupied in sections - specific requirements [P11.2]				
Disturbance - specific requirements [P11.5]	The contractor shall ensure that noise levels are kept to a minimum. In the event of complaints from the surrounding residential areas, the contractor shall remedy such at their own expense until the issue has been remedied.			
Environmental disturbance - specific requirements [P11.6]	Refer to Environmental Management Plan, attached to the contract document.			

©Copyright reserved: JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 - May 2018 Contract Data

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

B 15.0 Changes made to JBCC® documentation

Reference may be made to other documents forming part of this agreement

Addendum to the JBCC® Principal Building Agreement (Edition 6.2)

Clause 1: Definitions

- Add the following wording to "**NOTICE**":

"A notice shall be formally submitted in the form as defined in clause 2.4. The notice shall make reference to the relevant JBCC Principal Building Agreement clause to which the notice is applicable and details of the notice shall be provide to substantiate notice."

- Add the following wording to "**PRINCIPAL AGENT**":

"The **Principal Agent** means any Principal, Associate Principal or Professional Engineer appointed generally or specifically by the management of the firm Bigen Africa Services (Pty) Ltd to fulfil the functions of the Principal Agent in terms of the Conditions of Contract."

- Replace the wording under "**CONSTRUCTION PERIOD**" with the following:

"The period commencing on the date of possession of the site by the contractor and ending on the date of practical completion"

Clause 2: Law, Regulations and Notice

- Add the following as a New Clause to the Contract: Clause 2.5

"Written Agreement In Terms Of Section 37 (2) Of The Occupational Health And Safety Act

The Contractor shall comply with the Occupational Health and Safety Specification prepared by the **Employer** in terms of the Construction Regulations, 2014 promulgated in terms of Section 43 of the Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act No. 85 of 1993).

Without limiting the Contractor's obligations in terms of the Contract, the **Contractor** shall before commencement of the Works or any part thereof, be in the possession of an approved Health and Safety Plan.

The **Contractor** shall submit an approved Health and Safety Plan to the Engineer within the time period stated in 12.2.22.

Contractor's Liability as mandatory

Notwithstanding any actions which the Employer may take, the Contractor accepts sole liability for due compliance with the relevant duties, obligations, prohibitions, arrangements and procedures imposed by the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), and all its regulations, including the Construction Regulations, 2014, for which he is liable as mandatory.

Contractor to notify Employer

The Employer retains an interest in all inquiries conducted under this Contract in terms of Section 31 and/or 32 of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993) and its Regulations following any incident involving the Contractor and/or Sub-Contractor and/or their employees. The Contractor shall notify the Employer in writing of all investigations, complaints or criminal charges which may arise pursuant to work performed under this Contract in terms of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993) and Regulations.

Contractor's Designer

The Contractor and his designer shall accept full responsibility and liability to comply with the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993) and the Construction Regulations, 2014 for the design of the Temporary

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Works and those part of the Permanent Works which the Contractor is responsible to design in terms of the Contract.

The Contractor shall sign the Section 37 (2) Agreement in terms of the OHSACT attached hereto as Part C1.2.2 Annexure C. Included in Section C3.5 (Management, Annexure C: Health and Safety Plan), detailed pricing shall to be filled in on the Health and Safety Plan document and the total sum carried forward to this item."

- Add the following as a New Clause to the Contract: Clause 2.6

"The contractor shall comply with all environmental aspects as prescribed in the Environmental Management Plan. Included in Section C3.5 (Management Annexure D: Environmental Management Plan), detailed pricing shall to be filled in on the Environmental Management Plan document and the total sum carried forward to this item."

- Add the following as a New Clause to the Contract: Clause 2.7

"The Contractor is to comply with all NHBRC regulations."

Clause 7: Design

- Add the following as a New Clause to the Contract: Clause 7.4

"Where the contractor elects to design alternative methods of construction, he shall, notwithstanding approval by the **Principal Agent**, be liable for any error or deficiency in any drawing or document supplied by him for that part of the Works, and for any loss or damage arising out of such error or deficiency.

The **Contractor** shall provide the following to the **Principal Agent** for retention by the **Employer** or his assignee in respect of all works designed by the **Contractor**:

7.4.1 A Certificate of Stability of the Works signed by a registered Professional Engineer confirming that all such works have been designed in accordance with the appropriate codes of practice.

7.4.2 Proof of registration and of adequate and current professional indemnity insurance cover held by the designer(s).

7.4.3 Design calculations should the **Principal Agent** request a copy thereof.

7.4.4 Engineering drawings and workshop details (both signed by the relevant professional engineer), in order to allow the **Principal Agent** to compare the design with the specified requirements and to record any comments he may have with respect thereto.

7.4.5 "As-Built" drawings in DXF electronic format after completion of the Works."

Cause 9: Indemnities

- Add the following as a New Clause to the Contract: Clause 9.1.4

"Notwithstanding anything else contained in this Contract, any indemnity provided by the **Contractor** to the **Employer** shall extend to the **Principal Agent** and the **Agents** and any of their subsidiary companies as well as its associates, directors and employees. The Contractor herewith indemnifies and holds harmless the **Employer** and the **Principal Agent** from any loss or damages, including but not limited to monetary loss, costs and expenses incurred by the loss or damage, all actions, proceedings, liability, claims, damages, loss of limb, loss of life, injuries, costs and expenses which may occur due to any actions or omissions by the **Contractor** its sub-contractors, service providers, employees or representative or caused in any way whatsoever by the **Contractor** its sub-contractors, service providers, employees or representatives."

Clause 10: Insurances

- Replace the word "parties" in the first paragraph with the following:

"**Contractor, Employer and Principal Agent**"

Clauses 10.1.1 to 10.1.5 shall remain as is.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- Replace clause 10.10 with the following:

"The Contractor shall effect and maintain Plant and Equipment insurance, Motor Vehicle Liability insurance and the insurance required in terms of the provisions of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases (COID) Act No. 130 of 1993 (as amended)."

Clause 11: Securities

- Amend 11.1 to read as follows:

"The **Contractor** shall not have the right to choose the security. The option which is presented in the contract data shall govern.

Notwithstanding anything else contained in this agreement, any guarantee issued by or on behalf of the Contractor shall be issued in the names of the **Principal Agent** and the **Employer**.

The **guarantee for construction** shall be provided to the **Employer** within twenty-one (21) calendar days of acceptance of the contractor's Form of Offer."

11.1.1 and 11.1.2 shall remain as is.

- Add the following to the end of 11.2.2:

"The guaranteed amount shall be equal in value to the maximum cash advance payment for materials and goods as per 25.4."

- Amend 11.10 to read as follows:

"There shall be no lien or right of retention held by any **Contractor** in respect of the works executed on site."

- Add the following as Clause 14.9:

"The guarantee for construction shall be provided by a Bank or Insurance Company approved by the **Employer**. Guarantees for construction submitted must be issued by either an insurance company duly registered in terms of the Short-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 35 of 1998) or by a bank duly registered in terms of the Banks Act, 1990 (Act 94 of 1990) on the pro-forma referred to above. No alterations or amendments of the wording of the pro-forma will be accepted (Included under C1.2 CONTRACT DATA Annexure A: Guarantee for Construction)"

Guidelines for guarantors as follows:

1.1 The institution should be an authorised financial service provider as defined in the Financial Advisory and Intermediary Services Act, 2002 (Act No 37 of 2002) (FAIS Act).

1.2. As such, a guarantor may be either an insurance company duly registered in terms of the Short-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 35 of 1998) or by a bank duly registered in terms of the Banks Act, 1990 (Act 94 of 1990).

1.3. The guarantor (bank or insurance company providing a financial guarantee) should have an acceptable credit rating received from a registered credit rating agency (Fitch, Global Credit Rating, Moody's Investor's Service or Standard & Poor Global Ratings).

1.4. The acceptable credit ratings of insurance companies and/or registered banks are as follows:

1.4.1. Insurance companies that have a claim paying ability rating of A- or above (Fitch, Global Credit Rating, S&P) or A3 or above (Moody's).

1.4.2. Banks that have a short-term rating of F1 or above (Fitch Ratings), A1 or above (Global Credit Rating), A-1 or above (S&P) or P-1 or above (Moody's).

Clause 12: Obligations of the Parties

- Amend 12.1.5 to read as follows:

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

"Give possession of the site to the **Contractor** within ten (10) working days of the contractor complying with the terms of 12.2.22, pending the availability of sites"

- Amend 12.2.2 to read as follows:

"Not applicable"

- Add the following as 12.2.22:

"Within fifteen (15) working days of the date of the agreement, submit to the **principal agent** the following:

1. Health and Safety Plan (Refer to Clause 2)
2. Initial programme (Refer to Clause 12.2.6)
3. A detailed cashflow forecast (Refer to Clause 12.2.12)
4. Insurance (Refer to Clause 10)
5. Building permit accordance to Occupational Health and Safety Act (Refer to Clause 2)"

Clause 19: Practical Completion

- 19.5: Delete the words

"...subject to the contractor's lien or right of continuing possession of the works where this has not been waived"

Clause 23: Revision of the Date for Practical Completion

- Add the following to Clause 23.1.1:

"Extension of time due to adverse rainfall conditions

Extension of time for Practical Completion of the Contract in the event of abnormal rainfall shall only be allowed in accordance with the following formula. No additional extension of Time for Practical Completion caused by adverse effect of weather conditions will be allowed, irrespective of the cause thereof or the effect it may have on the execution of the Works:

$$V = (Nw - Nn) + (Rw - Rn)/20$$

Where:

V = Extension of time in calendar days for the calendar month under consideration

Nw = Actual number of days during the calendar month under consideration on which a rainfall of 10mm and more is recorded

Rw = Actual total rainfall in mm recorded during the calendar month under consideration

Nn = Average number of days, derived from rainfall records, on which a rainfall of 10mm and more was recorded during the relevant calendar month as per the data tabulated hereinafter

Rn = Average total rainfall in mm for the relevant calendar month, derived from rainfall records, as tabulated hereinafter

Where the extension of time due to abnormal rainfall has to be calculated for portion of a calendar month, pro rata values shall be used. Should V be negative for any particular month, and should its absolute value exceed the corresponding value of Nn, then V shall be taken as being equal to minus Nn. The total extension of time to be granted shall be the algebraic sum of all the monthly extensions, provided that if this total is negative then the time for completion shall not be reduced due to subnormal rainfall.

Rainfall records for the period of construction shall be taken on Site. The **Contractor** shall provide and install all the necessary equipment for accurately measuring the rainfall. The **Contractor** shall also provide, erect and maintain a security fence plus gate, padlock and keys at each measuring station, all at his own cost. The **Principal Agent** or his Representative shall take and record the daily rainfall readings. The **Contractor** shall be permitted to attend these readings, in the company of the **Principal Agent** or their Representative. Access to the measuring gauge(s) shall at all times be under the **Principal Agent's** control.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

The rainfall records applicable to this Contract are those recorded at Weather Station KIMBERLY 0290468 4. The following values of N_n and R_n shall apply:"

Month	R _n (mm)	N _n (days)
January	57	9.8
February	76	9.8
March	65	10.2
April	49	7.6
May	16	3.3
June	7	2.5
July	7	1.5
August	7	1.8
September	12	3.1
October	30	6.1
November	42	7.7
December	46	7.9
Total	414	71

- Add the following new clause 23.9

"Revision to the date for Practical Completion shall only be considered when work on the critical path of the agreed programme for the Works is delayed."

- Add the following new clause 23.10

"The removal and replacement of materials and/or workmanship which do not conform to specification or drawings shall not constitute grounds for an extension of the construction period nor for an adjustment to the contract value (clause 23.3)"

Clause 25: Payment

- Delete the wording of clause 25.2 and replace with

"Refer to clause 25.10"

- Delete Clause 25.3.2 in its entirety

- Add the following to Clause 25.3.4:

"Price adjustment for inflation is in accordance with the JBCC Contract Price Adjustment Provisions CPAP Indices Application Manual as calculated and published by Stats SA and distributed through JBCC (May 2005 Edition) **will not be applicable.**"

- Add the following to Clause 25.4.4:

"covered by an advance payment guarantee or such other security as may be accepted by the employer"

- Amend 25.7.5 to read as follows:

"Not applicable"

- Replace Clause 25.10 with the following:

Payment to the Contractor

Notwithstanding anything else contained in this contract, payment of monthly certificates will be done as follows:

"25.10.1 The Contractor will prepare and submit payment certificates by the 20th of the month to the **Principal Agent.**"

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- 25.10.2 The **Principal Agent/Agents** will check and issue the certificate to the Employer by the 25th of the month for approval by **Employer**.
- 25.10.3 The **Employer** shall pay to the contractor the amount certified in an interim payment certificate within thirty (30) calendar days of the date for issue of the payment certificate.
- 25.10.4 Preliminaries shall be paid as method indicated in the D3 below (D3 - contract data).
- 25.10.5 No payments will be certified with proof payment of local labours.
- 25.10.6 No payments will be certified if local sub-contractors are not paid according to their contracts.

Compensatory interest will not be paid by the Employer."

- Delete Clause 25.12.1 and replace with the following:

"Ninety Five percent (95%) of such value in interim payment certificates issued until the payment reduction amount reaches 5% of the contract sum."

- 25.14: Change the notice period

from "five (5) working days" to "ten (10) working days" in order to line up with the notice period in 28.1.

- Amend 25.14.2 to read as follows:

"Not applicable"

- Add the following new clause 25.18:

"The **Employer** shall pay the contractor the amount certified in the final payment certificate within thirty (30) calendar days of the date of issue of the final payment certificate."

Clause 27: Recovery of Expense and/or Loss

- Amend 27.1.5 to read as follows:

"Not applicable"

Clause 29.0 Termination

Add the following after 29.1.3:

"or where ...

29.1.4: The contractor's estate has been sequestrated, liquidated or surrendered in terms of the insolvency laws in force within the Republic of South Africa

29.1.5: The contractor has engaged in corrupt or fraudulent practices in competing for or in executing the contract"

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

C TENDER CLOSING

Tender closing date	Refer to T1.2 (Tender Data)	Time	Refer to T1.2 (Tender Data)
Tender submission address	Refer to T1.2 (Tender Data)		
Tender may be submitted by e-mail	No	Refer to T1.2 (Tender Data)	E-mail Refer to T1.2 (Tender Data)

D TENDERER'S SELECTIONS

All information provided in this section requires consultation with the parties to the agreement. The Principal Agent however has the right to preselect certain alternatives available to the contractor and the items selected by the principal agent shall be deemed applicable.

D 1.0 Securities [1 1.0]

Guarantee for construction: Select Option A or B

B

Option A	Guarantee for construction (variable) by contractor [11.1.1]
----------	--

Option B	Guarantee for construction (fixed) by contractor [11.1.2]
----------	---

Guarantee for payment by employer [11.5.1; 11.10]	Amount	Not applicable
---	--------	----------------

Advance payment, subject to a guarantee for advance payment [11.2.2; 11.3]	Amount	Applicable to the maximum value of material on site.
--	--------	--

D 2.0 Contractor's annual holiday periods during the construction period

Year 1 contractor's annual holiday period	start date	15 Dec 2026	end date	4 Jan 2026
Year 2 contractor's annual holiday period	start date		end date	
Year 3 contractor's annual holiday period	start date		end date	

D 3.0 Payment of preliminaries [25.0]

Select Option A or B

A

Where the **contractor** does not select an option, Option A shall apply

Where the total amount of **preliminaries** is not identified (in a lump sum contract) it shall be taken as 7.5% (seven and a half per cent) of the **contract sum**, excluding contingency sums and any provision for contract price adjustment (cost fluctuation)

Option A	Assessed by the principal agent , an amount prorated to the value of the works executed in the same ratio as the amount of the preliminaries to the contract sum which contract sum shall exclude the amount of preliminaries . Contingency sum(s) and any provision for contract price adjustment (cost fluctuations) shall be excluded for the calculation of the aforesaid ratio
----------	--

Option B	An amount agreed by the principal agent and the contractor in terms of the bills of quantities or the priced document to identify an initial establishment charge, a time based charge and a final disestablishment charge. Payment of the time-based charge shall be adjusted from time to time as may be necessary to take into account the progress of the works
----------	---

©Copyright reserved: JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 - May 2018 Contract Data

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

D 4.0 Adjustment of preliminaries [26.9.4]

Select Option A or B ☐ **A** Where the **contractor** does not select an option, Option A shall apply

The amount of **preliminaries** shall be adjusted to take account of the effect of changes in time and/or value on **preliminaries**. Such adjustment shall be based on the particulars provided by the **contractor** for this purpose in terms of Options A or B, shall preclude any further adjustment of the amount of **preliminaries** and shall apply notwithstanding the actual employment of resources by the **contractor** in the execution of the **works**

For the adjustment of **preliminaries** both the **contract sum** and the **contract value** shall exclude the amount of **preliminaries**, contingency sum(s) and any provision for contract price adjustment (cost fluctuations)

Where the total amount of **preliminaries** is not identified (in a lump sum contract) it shall be taken as 7.5% (seven and a half per cent) of the **contract sum**, excluding contingency sums, and any provision for contract price adjustment (cost fluctuation)

Option A	The preliminaries shall be adjusted in accordance with an allocation of preliminaries amounts to be provided by the contractor within fifteen (15) working days of the date of acceptance of the tender as follows: - An amount which shall not be varied; - An amount varied in proportion to the contract value as compared to the contract sum; - An amount varied in proportion to the number of calendar days extension to the date of practical completion to which the contractor is entitled with an adjustment of the contract value as compared to the number of calendar days in the initial construction period Where the above-mentioned information is not provided the following allocation of preliminaries amounts shall apply: - Ten per cent (10%) shall not be varied - Fifteen per cent (15%) shall be varied in proportion to the contract value as compared to the contract sum - Seventy-five per cent (75%) shall be varied in proportion to the number of calendar days extension to the date of practical completion to which the contractor is entitled with an adjustment of the contract value as compared to the number of calendar days in the initial construction period Where completion in sections is required the contractor shall provide an apportionment of preliminaries per section. Should the contractor fail to provide the apportionment of preliminaries per section the categorised amounts shall be prorated to the cost of each section within the contract sum as determined by the principal agent
Option B	The preliminaries shall be adjusted in accordance with a detailed breakdown of preliminaries amounts for the works or of a section to be provided by the contractor within fifteen (15) working days of possession of the site. Such breakdown shall inter alia include administrative and supervisory staff charges and charges for the use of construction equipment, all in terms of the programme The adjustment of preliminaries shall be based on the number of calendar days extension to the date of practical completion to which the contractor is entitled with an adjustment of the contract value as compared to the number of calendar days in the initial construction period taking into account the resources planned for the period of construction during which the delay occurred fnot for the period added to the initial or extended date for practical completion) Where the contractor does not provide the detailed breakdown of preliminaries within the period stated, Option A shall apply

©Copyright reserved: JBCC® Principal Building Agreement, Edition 6.2 - May 2018 Contract Data

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C1.2 Contract Data

Annexure A: Form of Guarantee

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2



Guarantee for Construction

For use with the JBCC® Principal Building Agreement

edition / date

GUARANTOR DETAILS

Guarantor:

Physical address:

Guarantor's signatory 1:

Capacity

Guarantor's signatory 2:

Capacity

Employer:

The Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs ("COGHSTA")

Contractor:

Principal Agent:

Bigen Africa Services (Pty) Ltd

Works:

Refer to PRINCIPAL BUILDING AGREEMENT Contract Data, clause A 1.0 Works

Site:

Refer to PRINCIPAL BUILDING AGREEMENT Contract Data, clause A 2.0 Site

Name of Signatory:

Contract Sum:

Accepted amount inclusive of tax

Currency

Rand

...amount in words:

Guaranteed Sum:

The maximum aggregate amount

Currency

Rand

...amount in words:

Guarantee for Construction:

(Insert variable or fixed)

FIXED

Expiry date

On the issue of the practical completion certificate

AGREEMENT DETAILS

Sections:

Total number / not applicable

1

Last section

1

Principal Agent issues:

'JBCC® format Interim Payment Certificates, the Final Payment Certificate, the Certificate of Practical Completion and the Certificate of Final Completion

1.0 GUARANTEE for CONSTRUCTION (Variable)

- 1.1 Where a Guarantee for Construction (Variable) in terms of the Agreement has been selected this clause 1.0 and 3.0 to 13.0 shall apply. The Guarantor's liability shall be limited to the diminishing amounts of the Guaranteed Sum as follows:-

GUARANTOR'S LIABILITY

PERIOD OF LIABILITY

- 1.1.1 Maximum Guaranteed Sum (not exceeding 10.0% of the contract sum) in the amount of:

N/A

Amount in words:

From and including the date of issue of this Guarantee for Construction and up to and including the date of issue of the interim payment certificate certifying in excess of 50% of the contract sum

- 1.1.2 Reducing to the Guaranteed Sum (not exceeding 6.0% of the contract sum) in the amount of:

N/A

From and including the day after the date of the aforesaid interim payment certificate and up to and including the date of issue of the only Certificate of Practical Completion or last Certificate of Practical Completion where there are sections

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Amount in words:

- 1.1.3 Reducing to the Guaranteed Sum (not exceeding 4.0% of the contract sum) in the amount of:

N/A

From and including the day after the date of the applicable Certificate of Practical Completion and up to and including the date of issue of the only Certificate of Final Completion or the last Certificate of Final Completion where there are sections

Amount in words:

- 1.1.4 Reducing to the Guaranteed Sum (not exceeding 2.0% of the contract sum) in the amount of:

N/A

From and including the day after the date of the applicable Certificate of Final Completion and up to and including the date of issue of the Final Payment Certificate where payment is due to the Contractor, whereafter this Guarantee for Construction shall expire. Where the Final Payment Certificate reflects payment due to the Employer this Guarantee for Construction shall expire upon payment of the full amount certified

Amount in words:

- 1.2 The Guarantor's liability limits set out in 1.1.1 to 1.1.4 shall apply in respect of any claim received by the Guarantor during the Security

2.0 GUARANTEE for CONSTRUCTION (Fixed)

- 2.1 Where a Guarantee for Construction (Fixed) in terms of the Agreement has been selected this clause 2.0 and 3.0 to 13.0 shall apply. The Guarantor's liability shall be limited to the amount of the Guaranteed Sum as follows:-

GUARANTOR'S LIABILITY

PERIOD OF LIABILITY

Maximum Guaranteed Sum (not exceeding 5.0% of the contract sum) in the amount of:

From and including the date of issue of this Guarantee for Construction and up to and including the date of the only Certificate of Practical Completion or the last Certificate of Practical Completion where there are sections, whereafter this Guarantee for Construction shall expire

Amount in words:

- 3.0 The Guarantor acknowledges that:-

- 3.1 Any reference in this Guarantee for Construction to the Agreement is made for the purpose of convenience and shall not be construed as any intention to create an accessory obligation or any intention to create a suretyship
- 3.2 Its obligation under this Guarantee for Construction is restricted to the payment of money
- 3.3 Reference to a Recovery Statement or an Interim or Final Payment Certificate, or a Certificate(s) of Practical or Final Completion shall mean such certificate issued by the Principal Agent
- 4.0 Subject to the Guarantor's maximum liability referred to in clauses 1.0 or 2.0 , the Guarantor hereby undertakes to pay the Employer the sum certified upon receipt of the documents identified in 4.1 to 4.3:-
- 4.1 A copy of a first written demand notice issued by the Employer to the Contractor stating that payment of a sum certified by the Principal Agent in an Interim or Final Payment Certificate has not been made in terms of the Agreement and failing such payment within seven (7) calendar days, the Employer intends to call upon the Guarantor to make payment in terms of 4.2

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- 4.2 A written demand notice issued by the Employer to the Guarantor at the Guarantor's physical address with a copy to the Contractor stating that a period of seven (7) calendar days has elapsed since the issue of the first written demand notice in terms of 4.1 and that the sum certified has not been paid to date. The Employer herewith calls up this Guarantee for Construction and demands payment of the sum certified from the Guarantor
- 4.3 A copy of the applicable payment certificate which entitles the Employer to receive payment in terms of the Agreement of the sum certified in 4.0
- 5.0 Subject to the Guarantor's maximum liability referred to in 1.0 or 2.0 , the Guarantor undertakes to pay the Employer the Guaranteed Sum or the full outstanding balance upon receipt of a first written demand notice from the Employer to the Guarantor at the Guarantor's physical address calling up this Guarantee for Construction stating that:-
- 5.1 The Agreement has been terminated due to the Contractor's default and that the Guarantee for Construction is called up in terms of 5.0. The demand notice shall enclose a copy of the notice of termination; or
- 5.2 A provisional sequestration or liquidation court order has been granted against the Contractor and that the Guarantee for Construction is called up in terms of 5.0. The demand notice shall enclose a copy of the court order
- 6.0 The aggregate amount of payment to be made by the Guarantor in terms of 4.0 and 5.0 shall not exceed the Guarantor's maximum liability in terms of 1.0 or 2.0
- 7.0 Where the Guarantor is a registered insurer and has made payment in terms of 5.0, the Employer shall within one hundred and eighty (180) calendar days of receipt of payment submit an expense account to the Guarantor showing how all monies received in terms of the Guarantee for Construction have been expended, or will be expended, and shall refund to the Guarantor any surplus amount. All monies refunded to the Guarantor in terms of this Guarantee for Construction shall bear interest at the prime overdraft rate of the Employer's bank compounded monthly and calculated from the date of payment by the Guarantor to the Employer until the date of refund
- 8.0 Payment by the Guarantor in terms of 4.0 or 5.0 shall be made within seven (7) calendar days upon receipt of the first written demand notice to the Guarantor
- 9.0 The Employer shall have the absolute right to arrange his affairs with the Contractor in any manner which the Employer deems fit and the Guarantor shall not have the right to claim his release from this Guarantee for Construction on account of any conduct alleged to be prejudicial to the Guarantor
- 10.0 The Guarantor chooses the physical address stated above for all transactions in relation to this security
- 11.0 This Guarantee for Construction is neither negotiable nor transferable and shall expire in terms of either 1.1.4 or 2.1, or on payment in full of the Guaranteed Sum or on the Guarantee expiry date, whichever is the earlier, where after no claims will be considered by the Guarantor. The original Guarantee for Construction form shall be returned to the Guarantor after it has expired
- 12.0 This Guarantee for Construction, with the required demand notices in terms of 4.0 or 5.0, shall be regarded as a liquid document for the purpose of obtaining a court order
- 13.0 Where this Guarantee for Construction is issued in the Republic of South Africa the Guarantor hereby consents to the jurisdiction of a court in the area where the project is located

Signed at

Date

Guarantor's Signatory 1

Guarantor's Signatory 2

Witness

Witness

Guarantor's seal or stamp

JBCC® Guarantee for Construction PBA 6.2 © Aug 2019

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C1.2 Contract Data

Annexure B: Waiver of Contractor's Lien

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2



® **Waiver of the Contractor's Lien** for use with the...

Principal Building Agreement
Minor Works Agreement

Edition used ?

Edition used ?

Contractor

Employer

Works

Site

AGREEMENT

The **contractor** waives in favour of the **employer** any lien or right of retention that is or may be held in respect of the **works** to be executed on the **site**

This done and signed at

Date

Name of Signatory

Capacity

For and on behalf of the **contractor** who by signature
hereto warrants such authorisation

Signature of Witness

Contractor

Street Address

Postal Address

E-mail

Fax

Code

Code

Mobile

Telephone

© Copyright reserved: JBCC® PBA or MWA Waiver of lien - May 2018

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

**Section C1.2
Contract Data**

**Annexure C: Written agreement in terms of the section
37(2) Agreement in terms of the OHSACT**

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

**WRITTEN AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 37 (2) OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH
AND SAFETY ACT
(Act Number 85 of 1993)**

This Agreement is made on this ____ day of _____ 20__ (“Effective Date”) between:

THE DEPARTMENT OF COOPERATIVE GOVERNANCE, HUMAN SETTLEMENTS AND TRADITIONAL AFFAIRS OF THE NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCE, herein represented by **Mr Bafedile Shadrack Lenkoe** as **Head of the Department** duly authorised thereto (“the Employer”)

AND

MANDATARY (Registration No:) herein represented by **Representative** as **Acting Capacity** duly authorised thereto (“the Mandatary”).

Workmen’s Compensation Number: _____

(hereinafter collectively referred to as “Parties” and individually as “Party”)

For purposes of **Lerato Park Integrated Housing Development for the Construction of twelve (12) Military Veteran Houses In Lerato Park** (Contract Number: NC/17/2026) (“Project”) at **Kimberley** for the **Northern Cape Province’s Department of Cooperative Government, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs** (“Client”).

PREAMBLE

WHEREAS the purpose of the Agreement is to regulate the legal responsibilities and liabilities arising from the work for which the Mandatary was engaged by the Employer and all related activities (“Contract Work”) specifically regarding occupational safety, health and environmental management.

AND WHEREAS this Agreement does not purport to regulate all the contractual relations between the Parties, and does not replace any existing agreement(s) between the Parties relating to any other aspect that does not relate to Occupational Safety, Health and Environmental (“SHE”) risks, responsibilities and liabilities.

AND WHEREAS it is the intention of the Parties that, subject to the express provisions of this Agreement, the Mandatary shall be the main risk carrier for SHE regarding the Contract Work.

AND WHEREAS this Agreement shall be deemed to be for the full extent of site presence and these rules will remain in force until such time as the Employer revokes the document in full or in part.

AND WHEREAS this declaration is binding on the Mandatary (being the Principal Contractor), as well as the fact, that in terms of this document any sub-contractor who may be utilised by the

**WRITTEN AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 37 (2) OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH
AND SAFETY ACT
(Act Number 85 of 1993)**

Mandatory from a liability perspective remains with the Mandatory. The onus is on the Mandatory to advise any sub-contractor that this document is an agreement under Section 37(2) of the Occupational Health and Safety Act and similarly binds such sub-contractors.

AND WHEREAS the Mandatory specifically acknowledges that any reference to the Mandatory and his employees also refer to the Mandatory's sub-contractors and the sub-contractors' employees.

NOW THEREFORE THE PARTIES AGREE AS FOLLOWS:

1. LEGAL COMPLIANCE

- 1.1. The Mandatory undertakes to comply with all legal requirements for SHE during the execution of the Contract Work, including both legislative and Common Law provisions.
- 1.2. The legal requirements mentioned above include, without limitation, the provisions of the following Acts and regulations as amended from time to time and shall always refer to the latest act, regulation or codes of practice:
 - 1.2.1. Occupational Health and Safety Act, 85 of 1993 and its regulations ("OHS-Act");
 - 1.2.2. The Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 130 of 1993
 - 1.2.3. The latest National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act, its regulations and related Codes of Practice as amended from time to time ;
 - 1.2.4. The National Environmental Management Act, 107 of 1998 ;
 - 1.2.5. The Environment Conservation Act, 73 of 1989;
 - 1.2.6. The National Water Act, 36 of 1998;
 - 1.2.7. All relevant labour legislation;
 - 1.2.8. Any other applicable National Acts of Parliament, Provincial legislation and local bylaws and regulations, as well as Common Law provisions.

2. MANDATORY AN EMPLOYER

The Mandatory shall be deemed to be an employer in his own right whilst performing the Contract Work on behalf of the Employer. In terms of Section 16 (1) of the OHS-Act, and the Mandatory shall accordingly ensure that he and/or his nominated Chief Executive Officer comply with the requirements of the OHS-Act.

3. REPORTING

The Mandatory and/or his designated person appointed in terms of Section 16(2) of the OHS-Act, shall report to the the Employer representative and/or a representative designated by the Employer prior to commencing Contract Work at the site or premises ("the Site").

**WRITTEN AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 37 (2) OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH
AND SAFETY ACT
(Act Number 85 of 1993)**

4. ACCESS TO THE OHS-ACT

The Mandatary shall ensure that he has an updated copy of the OHS-Act and the relevant Act on site at all times, and that this is accessible to his appointed responsible persons and employees.

5. WARRANTY OF COMPLIANCE

Without derogating from any legal requirement or any other aspect of the Agreement, the Mandatary undertakes to ensure that he his employees will at all times comply with the following conditions:

- 5.1. In terms of this Agreement the Mandatary warrants that he agrees to the arrangements and procedures, as prescribed by the Employer, and as provided for in terms of Section 37(2) of the OHS-Act, for the purposes of compliance with the OHS-Act.
- 5.2. The Mandatary acknowledges that this Agreement constitutes an agreement in terms of Section 37(2) of the OHS-Act, whereby all responsibility for SHE matters relating to the Contract Work the Mandatary and his employees are to perform on the Site in terms of the engagement shall be the obligation of the Mandatary.
- 5.3. The Mandatary further warrants that he and/or his employees undertake to maintain such compliance with the OHS-Act. Without derogating from the generality of the above, or from the provisions of the Agreement, the Mandatary shall ensure that the clauses as hereunder described are at all times adhered to by himself, his employees his sub-contractors and the sub-contractor's employees.
- 5.4. The Mandatary hereby warrants and undertakes to ensure that the health and safety of any person on the Site will not be endangered by the conduct and/or activities of himself and his employees in execution of the Contract Work whilst they are on the Site.
- 5.5. All work performed on Site must be performed under the close supervision of people who are trained to understand all the SHE hazards associated with any Contract Work that the Mandatary performs on Site.

6. APPOINTMENTS AND TRAINING

- 6.1. The Mandatary shall appoint competent persons as per Section 16 (2) of the OHS-Act. Any such appointed person shall be trained on any SHE matter, and the OHS-Act provisions pertinent to the Contract.
- 6.2. Copies of any appointments or delegation of authority made by the Mandatary in terms of Section 16 (2) of the OHS-Act shall immediately be provided to the Employer.
- 6.3. The Mandatary shall further ensure that all his employees are trained on the health and safety aspects relating to Contract Work and that they understand the hazards associated with such work being carried out on the Site that forms part of the Contract Work.
- 6.4. Without derogating from the foregoing, the Mandatary shall, in particular, ensure that all his users or operators of any materials, machinery or equipment are properly trained in the use of such materials, machinery or equipment.

**WRITTEN AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 37 (2) OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH
AND SAFETY ACT
(Act Number 85 of 1993)**

- 6.5. Notwithstanding the provisions of the above, the Mandatary shall ensure that his appointed responsible persons and employees are at all times familiar with the provisions of the OHS-Act, and that they comply with the provisions.
- 6.6. The Mandatary may be required to nominate its employee(s) to successfully undergo the Employer's or the Client's SHE training course, providing the Contract Work requires such.

7. SUPERVISION, DISCIPLINE AND REPORTING

- 7.1. The Mandatary shall ensure that all Contract Work performed is done under strict supervision, and that no unsafe or unhealthy work practices are permitted. Discipline regarding health and safety matters shall be strictly enforced against any of his employees regarding non-compliance by such employee with any SHE matters.
- 7.2. The Mandatary shall further ensure that his employees report to him all unsafe or unhealthy work situations immediately after they become aware of the same, and that he in turn immediately reports these to the Employer and/or its representative.
- 7.3. The Mandatary shall report to the Employer's representative daily to ensure that any work that he might perform will not compromise the safety of the Employer's process or any persons on site.

8. CO-OPERATION

- 8.1. The Mandatary and/or its responsible persons and employees shall provide full Cooperation and information if and when the Employer or its representative inquiries into SHE issues concerning the Mandatary. It is hereby recorded that the Employer and his representative shall at all times be entitled to make such inquiry.
- 8.2. Without derogating from the generality of the above, the Mandatary and his responsible persons shall make available to the Employer and his representative, on request, any and all checklists and inspection registers required to be kept by him in respect of any of his materials, machinery or equipment.

9. WORK PROCEDURES

- 9.1. The Mandatary shall utilise its own procedures, guidelines and other documentation as required for the purposes of ensuring a healthy and safe Working environment.
- 9.2. The Mandatary shall then ensure that his responsible persons and employees are familiar with, and utilise the documents.
- 9.3. The Mandatary shall implement and enforce safe work practices as required by the OHS-Act, and he shall ensure that his responsible persons and employees are made conversant with the contents of these practices and that they adhere to such procedures.
- 9.4. The Mandatary shall ensure that his employees will obtaining a permit before performing Contract Work requiring a permit and that his employees will be trained and found competent prior to performing Contract Work.

**WRITTEN AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 37 (2) OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH
AND SAFETY ACT
(Act Number 85 of 1993)**

10. HEALTH AND SAFETY MEETINGS

- 10.1. If required in terms of the OHS-Act, the Mandatary shall establish his own health and safety committee(s), and ensure that his employees, being the committee members, hold health and safety meetings as often as may be required, and at least once every three (3) months.
- 10.2. the Employer may elect to permit the Mandatary's health and safety representatives to attend the Employer's health and safety committee meetings.

11. INDEMNITIES

- 11.1. The Mandatary indemnifies and holds the Employer and any of its subsidiary companies as well as their associates, directors and employees from and against any and all losses, damages, penalties, costs, expense, attorneys' fees, loss of limb, loss of life, injuries, costs and expenses which may occur due to injury, death, permanent or temporary incapacity or loss of property, all actions, proceedings, claims, and liability of any nature whatsoever arising out of the Mandatary's failure to perform its responsibilities in accordance with the terms of this Agreement and the Mandatary's actions or failure to act when action is required, and more specifically for the following:
 - 11.1.1. A non-compliance by the Mandatary with any provision of the legislation as referred to in Clause 1 above, common law, Act of Parliament, regulation and bylaw of any local authority arising out of or due to the execution of the Contract Work or occupation of the site by the Mandatary.
 - 11.1.2. Claims from other parties, whether against the Employer or the Mandatary, consequent upon death, bodily injury or illness of any person or damage to any property arising out of or due to the execution of the Contract Work or occupation of the site by the Mandatary.
 - 11.1.3. Physical loss or damage to any plant, equipment or other property belonging to the Mandatary or his subordinates or agents.

12. INSURANCE AND REGRESS

- 12.1. The Mandatary shall ensure that he has a valid registration with the Compensation Commissioner, as required in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act 130 of 1993, and that all payments owing to the Commissioner are discharged. The Mandatary shall further ensure that the cover shall remain in force during the duration of the Contract Work
- 12.2. In order to verify the cover mentioned above the Employer shall be entitled to request at any time of the Mandatary to furnish the Employer with written proof of registration and good standing with the Compensation Fund, which proof shall be delivered within 14 (fourteen) days of such request.
- 12.3. Notwithstanding Clause 12.2, the Mandatary shall deliver to the Employer a certificate of good standing with the Compensation Fund, or similar proof acceptable by the Employer, annually should the contract duration warrant this.

**WRITTEN AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 37 (2) OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH
AND SAFETY ACT
(Act Number 85 of 1993)**

- 12.4. The Mandatary warrants that he is in possession of the following insurance cover which shall remain in force during the duration of the Contract Work:
- 12.4.1. Public liability insurance cover;
- 12.4.2. Insurance covering his liabilities to any of his and/or his sub-contractors' employees;
- 12.4.3. Insurance covering any liabilities in respect of Environmental pollution, damage or other loss relating to inadequate Environmental management;
- 12.4.4. Any other insurance cover that will adequately make provision for any possible losses and/or claims arising from the indemnities provided for in this Agreement.
- 12.5. In order to verify the cover mentioned in Clause 12.4 the Employer shall be entitled to request of the Mandatary to furnish the Employer with written proof of such cover, which proof shall be delivered within 14 (fourteen) days of such request.
- 12.6. Notwithstanding Clause 4.5, the Mandatary shall deliver to the Employer written proof of his public liability insurance, annually should the contract duration warrant this.
- 12.7. Should any finding / order / penalty or similar conclusion be made by a court of law, arbitrator, national, provincial or local authority against the Employer due to something for which the Mandatary is liable in terms of this Agreement, then the Mandatary shall, within 30 (thirty) days after being so requested by the Employer, make good any and all loss suffered by the Employer as a result of such finding, order or penalty.

13. MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS

The Mandatary shall ensure that all his employees undergo routine medical examinations, and that they are medically fit for the purposes of Contract Work they are to perform and provide the proof of such to the Employer or its representative on request.

14. INCIDENT REPORTING AND INVESTIGATION

All incidents referred to in the OHS-Act shall be reported by the Mandatary to the Department of Labour and to the Employer immediately upon becoming aware of such incident. The Client shall further be provided with copies of any written documentation relating to any incident. The Client retains an interest in the notification of any incident as described, above, as well as in any formal investigation and/or inquiry conducted in terms of Section 32 of the OHS-Act into such incident.

15. SUB-CONTRACTORS

- 15.1. The Mandatary shall notify the Employer of any sub-contractor he may wish to perform work on the Site in terms of the Contract Work. It is hereby recorded that all the terms and provisions contained in this Agreement shall be equally binding upon the sub-contractor prior to the sub-contractor commencing with Sub-Contracted Work. Without derogating from the generality of this paragraph:
- 15.2. The Mandatary shall ensure that training as discussed above, is provided, prior to the sub-contractor commencing work on the Site.

**WRITTEN AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 37 (2) OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH
AND SAFETY ACT
(Act Number 85 of 1993)**

- 15.3. The Mandatary shall ensure that work performed by the sub-contractor is done under strict supervision and discipline, as described above.
- 15.4. The Mandatary shall inform the Employer of any SHE hazard and/or issue which the sub-contractor may have brought to his attention.
- 15.5. The Mandatary shall inform the Employer of any difficulty encountered with regard to compliance by the sub-contractor to any SHE instruction, procedure and/or legal provision applicable to work the sub-contractor performs in terms of the Contract Work.

16. SECURITY AND ACCESS

The Mandatary shall ensure that all employees, materials, machinery or equipment are safeguarded at all times to prevent any injury or losses in terms of crime related activities.

17. FIRE PRECAUTIONS AND FACILITIES

The Mandatary shall ensure that an adequate supply of fire protection and first aid facilities is provided for Contract Work to be performed. The Mandatary shall further ensure that all his employees are familiar with fire precautions at the Site, which include fire hazards that may be caused by third parties and emergency exits and that such precautions are adhered to.

18. HYGIENE AND CLEANLINESS

The Mandatary shall ensure that the area where Contract Work is performed is at all times maintained to reasonably practicable levels of hygiene and that they maintain the surrounding area of Contract Work site to a reasonably practicable level of cleanliness. In this regard, no loose materials shall be left lying unnecessarily, and Contract Work site shall be cleared of waste material regularly and on completion of Contract Work.

19. NO NUISANCE

The Mandatary shall ensure that neither he nor his employees undertake any activity which may cause environmental impairment, nor constitute any form of nuisance to the surroundings. The Mandatary shall ensure that no hindrance, hazard, annoyance or inconvenience is inflicted on any parties. Where such situations are unavoidable, the Mandatary shall give prior notice to the Employer.

20. INTOXICATION NOT ALLOWED

No intoxicating substance of any form shall be allowed on site. Any person reasonably suspected of being intoxicated shall not be allowed on the site. Save that any person required to take medication shall notify the relevant Construction supervisor and Assistant Construction Supervisor thereof, as well as the potential side effects of the medication.

**WRITTEN AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 37 (2) OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH
AND SAFETY ACT
(Act Number 85 of 1993)**

21. PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT

The Mandatary shall ensure that his responsible persons and employees are provided with adequate personal protective equipment (PPE) for Contract Work they may perform, and in accordance with the requirements of General Safety Regulation 2(1) of the OHS-Act. The Mandatary shall further ensure that his responsible persons and employees wear the PPE issued to them at all material times.

22. PLANT, MACHINERY AND EQUIPMENT

22.1. The Mandatary shall ensure that all the plant, machinery, equipment and/or vehicles he may wish to utilise while performing work in terms of the Contract Work are at all times of sound order and fit for the purpose for which it is intended, and that it complies with the requirements of Section 10 of the OHS-Act as well as any other legislation and requirements from the Employer.

22.2. In accordance with the provisions of Section 10 (4) of the OHS-Act, the Mandatary hereby assumes the liability, for taking the necessary steps to ensure that any article or substance that it erects or installs at the Site, or manufactures, sells or supplies for the Employer, complies with all the prescribed requirements and will be safe and without risks to people's health.

23. NO USAGE OF THE EMPLOYER'S EQUIPMENT

The Mandatary hereby acknowledges that his employees shall not be permitted to use any materials, machinery or equipment of the Employer unless the prior written consent of the Employer has been obtained, in which case, the Mandatary shall ensure that only those persons authorised to make use of the same, have access thereto.

24. TRANSPORT

The Mandatary shall ensure that all vehicles used for the performing work in terms of the Contract Work are in a roadworthy condition, are licensed and insured. All drivers shall have relevant valid driving licences and no vehicle shall carry passengers at the back of LDV's or other vehicles unless it is specifically designed to do so. All drivers shall adhere to the speed limits and road signs at all times.

25. DURATION OF AGREEMENT

This agreement shall remain in force for the duration of Contract Work to be performed by the Mandatary and/or whilst any of the Mandatary's workmen are present on the Site applicable in terms of the Contract Work.

For: the Employer

Signed at _____ on this _____ day of _____ 20_____

**WRITTEN AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 37 (2) OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH
AND SAFETY ACT
(Act Number 85 of 1993)**

WITNESSES

1. _____

2. _____

Name of Signatory

Signature

For: the Mandatary

Signed at _____ on this _____ day of _____ 20_____

WITNESSES

1. _____

2. _____

Name of Signatory

Signature

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Part C2 Pricing Data

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

PRICING DATA

CONTENTS LIST

Section	Description	Page No
PART C2.1	PRICING INSTRUCTIONS	
1.	General.....	C2.1
2.	Pay Items.....	C2.1
3.	Quantities	C2.2
4.	Rates	C2.3
PART C2.2	BILL OF QUANTITIES	
PART C2.3	SUMMARY OF BILL OF QUANTITIES	

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

**Section C2.1
Pricing Instructions**

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

PRICING INSTRUCTIONS

1. GENERAL

These pricing instructions provide the Tenderer with guidelines and requirements with regard to the completion of the bill of quantities. These pricing instructions also describe the criteria and assumptions which will be assumed in the Contract to have been taken into account by the Tenderer when developing his prices.

The bill of quantities shall be read with all the documents which form part of this Contract.

The following words have the meaning hereby assigned to them:

Unit	The unit of measurement for each item of work in terms of the Scope of Work.
Quantity	The number of units for each item.
Rate	The payment per unit of work at which the tenderer tenders to do the work.
Amount	The product of the quantity and the rate tendered for an item.
Lump sum	An amount tendered for an item, the extend of which is described in the Pricing Instructions, Bill of Quantities or the Scope of Work but the quantity
(L.Sum)	of work of which is not measured in any units.

The budget for this contract is governed by the minimum subsidy quantum provisions published by The Department of Human Settlements. Preference will be given to those tenders that price their tenders within such subsidy provisions.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

The following is a snippet of the 2023/2024 quantum provisions and shall only be a guideline for tenders to use as a benchmark.

Annexure E

DETAILED COST BREAKDOWN FOR MILITARY VETERANS 50 SQUARE METRE HOUSE IMPLEMENTATION DATE: 1 APRIL 2024	
Cost elements	Cost
Earthworks	R11 218
Concrete, Formwork & Reinforcement	R26 289
Brickwork	R33 189
Roof Structure	R46 874
Ceiling	R12 256
Above ceiling insulation	R2 608
Windows standard	R5 840
Windows special low e clear and opaque glass	R6 620
Doors and Frames	R10 509
Finishing and paintwork	R27 944
Electrical	R18 374
Floor and wall tiling	R10 767
Plumbing and toilet plus rainwater disposal	R22 719
2 plate hob	R650
Joinery	R5 963
Carport	R18 446
Fencing (32,5m)	R5 869
Subtotal A	R266 135
P & G	R24 221
Subtotal B	R290 356
Clerk of works	R9 108
Project manager	R10 517
Transfer cost	R1 350
Beneficiary administration	R735
Total	R312 066
Total rounded off	R312 066

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

2. PAY ITEMS

Descriptions in the Bill of Quantities are abbreviated and comply generally with those in the Standard Specifications. The measurement and payment clause of each Standard Specification, read together with the relevant clauses of the Scope of Work, set out what ancillary or associated activities are included in the rates for the operations specified. Should any requirements of the measurement and payment clause of the applicable Standard Specification, or the Scope of Work, conflict with the terms of the Bill of Quantities, the requirements of the Standard Specification or Scope of Work, as applicable, shall prevail.

The units of measurement described in the Bill of Quantities are metric units. Abbreviations used in the Bill of Quantities are as follows:

mm	=	millimetre	h	=	hour
m	=	metre	kg	=	kilogram
km	=	kilometre	t	=	ton (1000kg)
m ²	=	square metre	No.	=	number
m ² .pass	=	square metre pass	sum	=	lump sum
ha	=	hectare	MN	=	meganewton
m ³	=	cubic metre	MN.m	=	meganewton-metre
m ³ .km	=	cubic metre-kilometre	PC sum	=	Prime Cost Sum
l	=	litre	Prov sum	=	Provisional sum
kl	=	kilolitre	%	=	per cent
MPa	=	megapascal	kW	=	kilowatt
kPa	=	kilopascal	wt	=	wall thickness
			dia	=	diameter

3. QUANTITIES & RATES

3.1 Unless otherwise stated, items are measured net in accordance with the drawings, and no allowance is made for waste.

3.2 Fixed price per house

The Contractor is required to price the unit complete and provide a percentage breakdown based on the milestones mentioned in clause 31.1. No additional payments will be entertained for any additional costs incurred by the contractor which should have been catered for in line with the “ENHANCEMENTS TO THE NATIONAL NORMS AND STANDARDS FOR THE

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

CONSTRUCTION OF STAND ALONE RESIDENTIAL DWELLINGS AND ENGINEERING SERVICES AND ADJUSTMENT OF THE HOUSING SUBSIDY QUANTUM”, as taken affect from 1 April 2023 for the “MILITARY VETERANS 50 SQUARE METER HOUSE”, compiled by the Department of Human Settlements Republic of South Africa”.

Payment to the Contractor for each house therefore will be a fixed amount.

Monthly milestone payment of houses

- Monthly payment certificates will be prepared and paid for as follow:

Milestone 1	Completion of raft foundation and floor slab construction complete inspected and approved by the Engineer.
Milestone 2	Completion of all brickwork including all door and window frames built in complete, inspected and approved by the Engineer.
Milestone 3	Completion of roof trusses, tiling battens, under tile sheeting and roof tiles complete, inspected and approved by the Engineer.
Milestone 4	Sewer and water connecting pipework from site boundary to house complete. All finishes including plaster, ceilings, paint, doors complete, windows complete, plumbing points, electrical points. 2 plate stoves, built in cupboards in the bedrooms and kitchens.
Milestone 5	Carport, boundary fence and gate to the stand.
Milestone 6	Completion of houses in totality inspected and approved by the Engineer.

- No payment for partially completed Milestones will be entertained.
- Preliminaries will be paid as method chosen by the Contractor.

3.3 Provisional Sums, Items and Contingencies

All Provisional Sums, Items and Contingencies will be omitted from this contract if no instruction is issued to execute work under any of the said amounts.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- 3.4 The Tenderer shall fill in a rate against all items where the words “rate only” appears in the amount column. The intention is that, although no work is foreseen under such item and no quantities are consequently given in the quantity column, the tendered rate shall apply should work under this item be actually required.
- 3.5 Except where rates only are required, the Tenderer shall insert all amounts to be included in his total tendered price in the “Amount” column and show the corresponding total tendered price.
- 3.6 The Tenderer shall not group together a number of items and tender one rate for such group of items.
- 3.7 All rates and sums of money quoted in the Bill of Quantities shall be in rands and whole cents. Fractions of a cent shall be discarded.
- 3.8 All prices and rates entered in the Bill of Quantities must be **excluding Value Added Tax (VAT)**. No VAT will be paid as part of this contract.
- 3.9 Should excessively high unit prices be tendered, such prices may be of sufficient importance to warrant rejection of a tender by the Employer.
- 3.10 Where the Contractor is required to furnish detailed drawings and designs or other information in terms of the Contract Documents, all costs thereof shall be deemed to have been provided for and included in the unit rates and sum amounts tendered for the items scheduled in the Bill of Quantities, and separate additional payments will not be made.

END OF SECTION

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C2.2 Bill of Quantities

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
	<u>BILL NO 1</u> <u>PRELIMINARIES</u> PROVISION SHALL BE MADE FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF (9) NINE MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES IN LERATO PARK PRINCIPAL BUILDING AGREEMENT The agreement shall be the Principal Building Agreement prepared and published by the Joint Building Contracts Committee: Edition 6.2, May 2018. The JBCC Principal Building Agreement contract data form an integral part of this agreement PRELIMINARIES The preliminaries shall be The JBCC® General Preliminaries (Edition 6.2 - May 2018) prepared and published by the Joint Building Contracts Committee for use with the JBCC Principal Building Agreement (6.2 Edition - May 2018). PREAMBLES FOR TRADES The General Preambles for Trades 2017 published by the Association of South African Quantity Surveyors shall be deemed to be incorporated in these bills of quantities and no claim arising from brevity of description of items fully described in the said Model Preambles will be entertained Supplementary preambles are incorporated in these bills of quantities and Section C3.4 to satisfy the requirements of this project. Such supplementary preambles shall take precedence over the provisions of the said Model Preambles The contractor's prices for all items throughout these bills of quantities must take account of and include for all of the obligations, requirements and specifications given in the said Model Preambles and in any supplementary preambles FULL INTENT AND MEANING OF CLAUSES Tenderers shall be deemed to have referred to the aforementioned documents for the full intent and meaning of each clause. These clauses are hereinafter referred to by the heading and clause number only.				

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
	this contract, such modifications, corrections or supplements as are necessary, are given under each relevant clause heading or within the relevant schedule. Where an item is not relevant to this specific contract, such item is marked "NA" signifying "Not applicable". PRICING OF CLAUSES Tenderers shall allow opposite each clause for any cost involved with complying with such clause. Any clauses left unpriced shall be deemed to be covered by rates and prices elsewhere incorporated throughout these bills of quantities. PAYMENT CATEGORIES Should 'Alternative A', as set out in the Principal Building Agreement contract data, be used for the adjustment of preliminaries, then each item priced is to be allocated to one or more categories by the insertion of the letter "F", "V" or "T", as the case may be, against the price in the rate column. These letters shall indicate the relevant categories as follows : F -A fixed amount, ie. which shall not be varied V -An amount which shall be varied in proportion to the contract value T -An amount which shall be varied in proportion to the construction period. NOTE: The Contractor must submit with his tender a detailed breakdown of his Preliminaries Matrix. <u>SECTION A : JBCC PRINCIPAL BUILDING AGREEMENT</u> <u>NOTE:</u> <u>Refer to section C1.2 - JBCC Contract Data, B15</u> <u>Changes made to the standard JBCC document</u> INTERPRETATION 1.1 Clause 1.0 - Definitions and interpretation. F:..... V:..... T:.....				

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
1.2	Clause 2.0 - Law, Regulations and Notices F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.3	Clause 2.5.1 - Compliance with regulations. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.4	Clause 2.5.2 - Compliance with Health & Safety Specification and Regulations F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.5	Clause 2.5.3 - Compliance with Environmental Management Plan and Regulations F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.6	Clause 2.5.4 - National Home Builders Registration Council (NHBRC) F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.7	Clause 3.0 - Offer and acceptance F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.8	Clause 4.0 - Cession and assignment F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.9	Clause 5.0 - Documents F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.10	Clause 6.0 - Employer's agents F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.11	Clause 7.0 - Design responsibility F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
	INSURANCES AND SECURITIES				
1.12	Clause 8.0 - Works risk. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2



SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
1.13	Clause 9.0 - Indemnities. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.14	Clause 10.0 - Insurances F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.15	Clause 11.0 - Securities F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
	EXECUTION				
1.16	Clause 12.0 - Obligations of the parties F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.17	Clause 13.0 - Setting out F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.18	Clause 14.0 - Nominated subcontractors F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.19	Clause 15.0 - Selected subcontractors F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.20	Clause 16.0 - Direct contractors F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.21	Clause 17.0 - Contract instructions. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
	COMPLETION				
1.22	Clause 18.0 - Interim completion F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.23	Clause 19.0 - Practical completion F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
1.24	Clause 20.0 - Completion in sections F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.25	Clause 21.0 - Defects liability period and final completion F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.26	Clause 22.0 - Latent defects liability period F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.27	Clause 23.0 - Revision of the date for practical completion F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.28	Clause 24.0 - Penalty for late or non-completion F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
	PAYMENT				
1.29	Clause 25.0 - Payment F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.30	Clause 26.0 - Adjustment of the contract value and final account F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.31	Clause 27.0 - Recovery of expense and/or loss F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
	SUSPENSION AND-TERMINATION				
1.32	Clause 28.0 - Suspension by the contractor F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.33	Clause 29.0 - Termination F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
	DISPUTE RESOLUTION				
1.34	Clause 30.0 - Dispute resolution F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2



SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
	<u>SECTION B : JBCC PRELIMINARIES</u>				
	<u>NOTE:</u> <u>Refer to Part C3.4.2 and section C1.2 - JBCC Contract Data, B14 (JBCC® General Preliminaries — selections) for information and changes made to the standard JBCC® General Preliminaries – May 2018</u>				
	1.0 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION				
1.35	Clause 1.1 - Definitions F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.36	Clause 1.2 - Interpretation F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
	2.0 DOCUMENTS				
1.37	Clause 2.1 - Checking of documents. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.38	Clause 2.2 - Provisional bills of quantities. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.39	Clause 2.3 - Availability of construction information F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.40	Clause 2.4 - Ordering of materials and goods F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
	3.0 PREVIOUS WORK AND ADJOINING PROPERTIES				
1.41	Clause 3.1 - Previous work - dimensional accuracy F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.42	Clause 3.2 - Previous work - defects F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.43	Clause 3.3 - Inspection of adjoining properties F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2



SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
	4.0 THE SITE				
1.44	Clause 4.1 - Handover of site in stages F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.45	Clause 4.2 - Enclosure of the works F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.46	Clause 4.3 - Geotechnical and other investigations F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.47	Clause 4.4 - Encroachments F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.48	Clause 4.5 - Existing premises occupied F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.49	Clause 4.6 - Services – known F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
	5.0 MANAGEMENT OF CONTRACT				
1.50	Clause 5.1 - Management of the works F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.51	Clause 5.2 - Progress meetings F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.52	Clause 5.3 - Technical meetings F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
	6.0 SAMPLES, SHOP DRAWINGS, ETC				
1.53	Clause 6.1 - Samples of materials F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.54	Clause 6.2 - Workmanship samples F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2



SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
1.55	Clause 6.3 - Shop drawings F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.56	Clause 6.4 - Compliance with manufacturer's instructions F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
7.0 DEPOSITS AND FEES					
1.57	Clause 7.1 - Deposits and fees F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
8.0 TEMPORARY SERVICES					
1.58	Clause 8.1 - Water F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.59	Clause 8.2 - Electricity F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.60	Clause 8.3 - Ablution and welfare facilities F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.61	Clause 8.4 - Communication facilities F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
9.0 PRIME COST AMOUNTS					
1.62	Clause 9.1 - Responsibility for prime cost amounts F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
10.0 ATTENDANCE ON SUBCONTRACTORS					
1.63	Clause 10.1 - General attendance F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.64	Clause 10.2 - Special attendance F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2



SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
	11.0 GENERAL				
1.65	Clause 11.1 - Protection of the Works. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.66	Clause 11.2 - Protection/isolation of existing works and works occupied in sections F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.67	Clause 11.3 - Security of the works. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.68	Clause 11.4 - Notice before covering work. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.69	Clause 11.5 - Disturbance. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.70	Clause 11.6 - Environmental disturbance. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.71	Clause 11.7 - Works cleaning and clearing. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.72	Clause 11.8 - Vermin. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.73	Clause 11.9 - Overhand work. F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.74	Clause 11.10 - Tenant installations by direct contractors F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			
1.75	Clause 11.11 - Advertising F:..... V:..... T:.....	Item			

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
<u>SECTION C: SPECIFIC PRELIMINARIES ITEMS TO BE PRICED SEPERATELY</u> Refer to Section C3 in the contract document					
1.76	C3.1.1 Employers Objectives Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.77	C3.1.2 Overview of the Works Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.78	C3.1.3 Scope of the Works Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.79	C3.1.4 Location of the Works Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.80	C3.1.5 Handover of completed houses Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.81	C3.1.6 Decanting facility Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.82	C3.2.1 Employer's Design Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.83	C3.2.2 Drawings Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.84	C3.3.1 Procurement Principles Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.85	C3.3.2 Contractors Personnel Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.86	C3.3.3 Temporary Workforce Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2



SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
1.87	C3.3.4 Labour Intensive Construction Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.88	C3.3.5 Subcontracting Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.89	C3.4.1 Standard Specifications Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.90	C3.4.2 Variation & Additions to Standard Specifications Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.91	C3.4.3 Particular Specification Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.92	C3.5.1.1 Concurrent Construction Contracts Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.93	C3.5.1.2 Contractor's Project Management Plan Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.94	C3.5.1.3 Construction Programme Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.95	C3.5.1.4 Quality Assurance Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.96	C3.5.1.5 Site Administration Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.97	C3.5.1.6 Site Instructions Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.98	C3.5.1.7 Site Meetings Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2



SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
1.99	C3.5.1.8 Payment Certificates Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.100	C3.5.1.9 Drawings, Operation and Maintenance Manuals Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.101	C3.5.1.10 Record of Decision and Environmental Management Plan Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.102	C3.5.1.11 Community Liaison and Community Relations Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum	Paid for under provisional sums, but guidelines under C3.5.1.11 will still be applicable		
1.103	C3.5.1.12 Built-up Areas Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.104	C3.5.1.13 Care of the Site Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.105	C3.5.1.14 Control of Water Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
1.106	C3.5.1.15 Survey and Setting Out Fixed.....Value.....Time.....	sum			
<u>BILL NO 1</u> <u>PRELIMINARIES</u>					
Carried forward to Summary of Bill of Quantities					R

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
	<u>BILL NO 2</u> <u>PROVISIONAL SUMS</u> SUPPLEMENTARY PREAMBLES General Work for which budgetary allowances are provided will be measured and valued in accordance with Clause 26 of the Principal Building Agreement and deducted in whole or in part if not required without any compensation for loss or profit on the said allowances Prime cost amounts and provisional sums are net. Prime cost amounts include for delivery to site of all articles concerned Provisional sums are for material and equipment supplied and installed complete by firms of specialists Profit Where stated, the contractor may allow for profit if required General attendance on nominated/selected subcontractors The item "Attendance" which follows each provisional sum for nominated/selected subcontractors' work, shall be deemed to cover all the contractor's costs incurred in providing free of charge to the nominated/selected subcontractors, the following: 1.Access to the site and places where the subcontract work is to be carried out, including the reasonable use of any temporary personnel hoists erected by the contractor 2.The provision of water and lighting and of single-phase electric power to a position within 50 metres of the place where the subcontract or subcontractors work is to be carried out other than water, fuel and power for commissioning of any installation 3.The provision of an area for the subcontractor to establish temporary office accommodation and workshops and for the storage of plant and materials and goods				
	Carried Forward				

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
	4.The use of erected scaffolding belonging to the contractor, in common with others having the like right, while it remains erected on the site				
	5.The use of ablution facilities and the like, where provided				
	6.The use of the site telecommunication facilities, where provided, subject to payment by the subcontractor for usage thereof				
	7.Making good all trades and cleaning down and removal of rubbish on completion				
	<u>BUDGETARY ALLOWANCES</u>				
	<u>For work to be executed by the Contractor and valued in terms of the "Adjustment to the Contract Value" clause in the Principal Building Agreement</u>				
	<u>Community requirements</u>				
2.1	.1 CLO/LDO remuneration	Prov sum	1		49 000.00
2.2	.2 Overheads, charges and profit on above	%		49 000.00	
	<u>Principal Agent requirements</u>				
2.3	.1 Communication facilities and equipment	Prov sum	1		7 000.00
2.4	.2 Overheads, charges and profit on above	%		7 000.00	
2.5	.5 Acceptance control testing	Prov sum	1		10 000.00
2.6	.6 Overheads, charges and profit on above	%		10 000.00	
2.7	.7 Approved building plans	Prov sum	1		110 000.00
2.8	.8 Overheads, charges and profit on above	%		110 000.00	
	<u>Materials for dayworks</u>				
2.9	.1 Materials used in the execution of dayworks	Prov sum	1		5 000.00
2.10	.2 Overheads, charges and profit on above	%		5 000.00	
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Contractor
 Witness 1
 Witness 2
 Employer
 Witness 1
 Witness 2

Contract: NC/17/2026 - Construction of twelve (12) Military Veteran houses
Part C2: Pricing Data
Section C2.2: Bill of Quantities
Dayworks



SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
	<u>BILL NO 3</u>				
	<u>DAYWORKS (PROVISIONAL)</u>				
	Note: Dayworks executed on instruction of the Principal Agent only. Items not used shall be deducted from the contract.				
	<u>LABOUR</u>				
3.1	(a) Skilled	hr	10		
3.2	(b) Semi-skilled	hr	25		
3.3	(c) Un-skilled	hr	35		
	<u>PLANT HIRE (WORK RATES ON SITE)</u>				
	<u>TRUCKS</u>				
	Flatbed trucks (specify capacity)				
3.4	(a) Capacity _____ m ³ (small)	hr	5		
3.5	(b) Capacity _____ m ³ (medium)	hr	5		
	<u>LDV'S</u>				
	LDV (specify size)				
3.6	(a) LDV _____ ton	km	50		
	<u>TLB'S</u>				
	Tractor loader backhoe (TLB)(specify model)				
3.7	(a) Model _____	hr	5		
	<u>ROLLERS</u>				
	Walk behind vibrating rollers (specify model)				
3.8	(a) Model _____ (BW 61) (small)	hr	5		
3.9	(b) Model _____ (BW 76) (medium)	hr	5		
3.10	(c) Model _____ (BW 90) (large)	hr	5		
	<u>COMPACTORS</u>				
	Plate compactors (specify model)				
3.11	(a) Model _____	hr	5		
	Wackers (specify model)				
3.12	(a) Model _____	hr	5		
				Carried Forward	

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Contract: NC/17/2026 - Construction of twelve (12) Military Veteran houses
Part C2: Pricing Data
Section C2.2: Bill of Quantities
Dayworks



SCHEDULE 1					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
	<u>CONCRETE MIXERS</u>				
	Concrete mixers (specify mixing volume)				
3.13	(a) Volume _____ liter (small, towable)	hr	5		
3.14	(b) Volume _____ liter (medium)	hr	5		
	<u>COMPRESSORS</u>				
	Portable diesel compressors (specify capacity)				
3.15	(a) Capacity _____ cfm (small)	hr	5		
3.16	(b) Capacity _____ cfm (medium)	hr	5		
	<u>TRANSPORT (COST TO AND FROM SITE)</u>				
	<u>Note:</u> Distance shall be measured one way only (tender rates shall include for transport in both directions to and from site)				
	<u>Low bed</u>				
3.17	(a) Low-bed (suitable for the largest piece of equipment above)	km	25		
	<u>Flatbed truck</u>				
3.18	(a) Small	km	25		
3.19	(b) Medium	km	25		
	<u>Security</u> Additional security for a cluster of houses (0-9 houses) The Employer may in certain circumstances be unable to take possession of prescribed sections. The price shall cover a dayworks cost to provide security to safe guard the houses				
3.20	The rate per one calendar day shall cover a 24 hours shift	days	30		
	<u>BILL NO 3</u> <u>DAYWORKS (PROVISIONAL)</u>				
Carried forward to Summary of Bill of Quantities					R

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Contractor Witness 1 Witness 2 Employer Witness 1 Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
	<u>Extra over trench and hole excavations in earth for excavation in:</u>				
4.5	Hard rock	m ³	7		
	<u>Extra over all excavations for carting away</u>				
4.6	Surplus material from excavations and/or stock piles on site to a dumping site to be located by the contractor	m ³	62		
	<u>Risk of collapse of excavations</u>				
4.7	Sides of bulk excavations not exceeding 1,5m deep	m ³	33		
	<u>Earth filling obtained from the excavations and/or prescribed stock piles on site, compacted to 93% Mod AASHTO density</u>				
4.8	to sloping of ground level away from houses	m ³	8		
	<u>Keeping excavations free of water</u>				
4.9	Keeping excavations free of all water other than subterranean water.	Item	1		
	<u>FILLING, ETC.</u>				
	<u>G5 material supplied by the Contractor compacted to 95% Mod AASHTO density.</u>				
4.10	Under floors, steps, pavings, etc.	m ³	81		
	<u>Compaction of surfaces</u>				
4.11	Compaction of ground surface under floors etc including scarifying for a depth of 150mm, breaking down oversize material, adding suitable material where necessary and compacting to 93% Mod AASHTO density.	m ²	101		
4.12	"Modified AASHTO Density" test	Item	4		
	<u>SOIL POISONING</u>				
	<u>Soil insecticide</u>				
4.13	Under floors	m ²	101		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
				Brought Forward	
	CONCRETE, FORMWORK AND REINFORCEMENT				
	<u>SUPPLEMENTARY PREAMBLES</u>				
	<u>Cost of tests</u> The costs of making, storing and testing of concrete test cubes as required under clause 7 "Tests" of SABS 1200 G shall include the cost of providing cube moulds necessary for the purpose, for testing costs and for submitting reports on the tests to the Engineer. The testing shall be undertaken by an independent firm or institution nominated by the Contractor to the approval of the Engineer. (Test cubes are measured separately).				
	<u>Formwork</u> Formwork to sides of bases, pile caps, ground beams, etc will only be measured where it is prescribed by the Engineer for design reasons. Formwork necessitated by irregularity or collapse of excavated faces will not be measured and the cost thereof shall be deemed to be included in the allowance for taking the risk of collapse of the sides of the excavations, provision for which is made in "Earthworks".				
	<u>REINFORCED CONCRETE CAST AGAINST EXCAVATED SURFACES</u>				
	<u>25MPa/19mm concrete</u>				
4.14	Foundation beams and surface bed on waterproofing	m ³	7.5		
4.15	Apron slab	m ³	3		
	<u>TEST BLOCKS</u>				
4.16	Making and testing 150 x 150 x 150mm concrete strength test cube	No	2		
	<u>CONCRETE SUNDRIES</u>				
	<u>Finishing top surfaces of concrete smooth with a wood float</u>				
4.17	Apron slabs to falls (with rounded edging)	m ²	33		
				Carried Forward	

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
4.18	<u>Finishing top surfaces of concrete smooth with a power float</u> Surface beds, slabs, etc (with rounded edging)	m²	50		
<u>SMOOTH FORMWORK (DEGREE OF ACCURACY II)</u>					
4.19	<u>Smooth formwork to sides</u> Edges, risers, ends and reveals not exceeding 300mm high or wide.	m	65		
<u>MOVEMENT JOINTS ETC</u>					
4.20	<u>Expansion joints with 10mm softboard between vertical concrete surfaces.</u> 10mm Joints not exceeding 300mm high.	m	29		
<u>REINFORCEMENT</u>					
4.21	<u>High tensile steel reinforcement to structural concrete work</u> All diameter bars	kg	109		
<u>Fabric reinforcement</u>					
4.22	Steel mesh reinforcement reference 245 in concrete surface beds, slabs, etc.	m²	82		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
<u>MASONRY</u>					
<u>SUPPLEMENTARY PREAMBLES</u>					
<u>BRICKWORK</u>					
<u>Pointing</u>					
All brickwork shall be flush pointing with all holes and crevices filled in, leaving a smooth surface finish.					
<u>SAMPLES</u>					
Samples of all masonry building units, except those for walls described as "load bearing", shall consist of a minimum of 6 units. Samples of building units to be used in walls described as "load bearing" shall consist of 30 units from every 30 000 units delivered to site					
<u>SUPERSTRUCTURE</u>					
<u>Reinforced stock brickwork in 1:3 cement mortar</u>					
4.23	110mm Thick wall (14 Mpa)	m ²	36		
4.24	110mm Thick wall in beamfilling	m ²	5		
4.25	230mm Thick wall (14 Mpa)	m ²	74		
<u>FACE BRICKWORK</u>					
<u>Extra over brickwork above for face brickwork (Allow R5500.00/1000 for purchasing and delivery of bricks to site excluding VAT). Facebrick to match existing development (with 10mm recessed joints)</u>					
4.26	Stretcher course bond (Including Reveals)	m ²	84		
<u>Facebrick sundries</u>					
4.27	230mm Wide face brick on edge sill	m	7		
4.28	230mm Wide face brick on edge lintel (With SANS approved Rod reinforcing - 3x R6)	m	11		
<u>Brickwork reinforcement</u>					
4.29	110mm Wide brickforce	m	195		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
4.30	150mm Wide brickforce <u>Precast pre-stressed concrete lintels built into brickwork</u>	m	430		
4.31	75 x 110mm Lintel <u>Galvanised wire ties etc</u>	m	4		
4.32	2.4mm Diameter roof tie 2m girth bent double with one end fixed to timber and other end built into brickwork <u>Joint forming material in movement joints</u>	no	24		
4.33	20mm "Jointex" low density performance foam built in vertically through brick walls	m ²	5		
<u>WATERPROOFING (PROVISIONAL)</u>					
<u>DAMP-PROOFING OF WALLS AND FLOORS</u>					
<u>One layer Gundle® API A.T USB Green 250µm damp proof membrane (or similar approved) under concrete aprons conforming to SANS 952-1:2011 laid with minimum 150mm overlaps and sealed with Gunplas pressure sensitive tape.</u>					
4.34	Under concrete raft & aprons <u>One layer of 375 micron "Consol Plastics Brickgrip DPC" embossed damp proof course, or similar approved</u>	m ²	130		
4.35	Below walls	m ²	8		
4.36	Below windows	m ²	1		
<u>SEALING STRIPS, JOINT SEALANTS, ETC</u>					
<u>"Sikaflex" polyurethane sealing compound including backing cord, bond breaker, primer, etc</u>					
4.37	20 x 10mm In vertical expansion joints including raking out expansion joint filler as necessary	m	15		
4.38	"Sikaflex-11 FC polyurethane sealant along perimeter of window frame where it abuts the facebrick wall	m	26		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
4.39	"Sikaflex-11 FC polyurethane sealant along perimeter of door frame where it abuts the facebrick wall and plaster & paint	m	49		
4.40	"Sikaflex-11 FC polyurethane sealant between 20mm brick overhang and the concrete raft	m	49		
4.41	Silicon sealant to baths, kitchen countertops, basins, etc.	m	9		
ROOF COVERINGS ETC.					
<u>TILES</u> <u>Note:</u> Price for roof tiles shall include polyethylene sheeting and SA Pine tiling battens complete <u>Terracotta Double Roman concrete roof tiles laid in straight bond with minimum of 75mm headlap. All eave tiles and thereafter every 3rd tile to be nailed in strict accordance with manufacturers specification. Roof tiles to be laid on an SABS approved single-sided Marely Radiant Barrier with joint lapped 150mm fixed over rafters and nailed through underlay with non-corrosive tile nails, including 38 x 38mm sawn softwood battens (grade S5-V5P) at 345mm centres, or similar products approved</u>					
4.42	Roof covering with pitch exceeding 22.5 degrees	m ²	68		
4.43	Ridge tiles to match roofing tiles bedded and pointed in 1:3 cement mortar tinted to match tile colour, including closed ends, etc	m	8		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
<u>CARPENTRY AND JOINERY</u>					
<u>SUPPLEMENTARY PREAMBLES</u>					
<u>ROOFS ETC</u>					
<u>Approved roof truss construction</u>					
The roof trusses to houses have not been designed. The Contractor shall have the roof trusses, etc designed by an approved Engineer appointed by the Contractor and submit this design with drawings to the Engineer for approval. The cost of all design fees, etc must be included in the cost of the roofs.					
<u>Plate nailed timber roof truss</u>					
4.44	Roof construction to house complete with wall plates, trusses, bracing, platform and support for 100 litre solar water geyser and panel, etc (battens for roof tiles must be included with roof tiling). Floor plan of the house = 50m ²	no	1		
<u>Sundries</u>					
4.45	Two coats carbolineum coal tar preservative on sawn timbers at eaves and wall plate	m ²	14		
<u>EAVES, VERGES, ETC</u>					
<u>Everite pressed nutec-cement, or similar approved</u>					
4.46	12 x 300mm Fibre cement fascia boards screwed to timber trusses twice screwed with 12 x 40mm countersunk brass screws, including PVC H profile fascia joiners	m	16		
4.47	Ditto, 275 x 80mm moulded barge boards	m	17		
<u>FIXED CEILINGS</u>					
<u>Supply and erect fixed Gypsum ceilings</u>					
4.48	6,4mm Gypsum fixed ceiling including 38 x 38mm SAP brandering or galvanised steel brandering (Depending on the design) at 400mm centres in one direction	m ²	42		
4.49	Timber cornice at junction of ceiling and wall (40x6mm Supawood or similar approved, painted with one coat primer and 2 coats ceiling paint fix to brandering with 3x30mm countersunk dry wall screws. 60x16mm Supawood edging, painted as for timber, fix to wall with 4x70 countersunk nylon plug @ 400 c/c)	m	52		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
4.50	135mm Thick aerolite fibreglass insulation(12kg/m³) on top of ceiling boards	m²	44		
4.51	533 x 533mm SCS Trap door to ceiling	no	1		
	<u>DOORS ETC</u>				
	<u>Wrought hardwood doors</u>				
	<u>Solid meranti framed and ledged flush back hardwood door hung to steel frames</u>				
4.52	44mm Stable door 813 x 2032mm high	no	2		
	<u>Wrought softwood doors</u>				
	<u>Hollow core flush doors with 3,2mm standard hardboard covering on both sides hung to steel frames</u>				
4.53	44mm Door 813 x 2032mm high	no	3		
	<u>CUPBOARDS TO KITCHENS, BEDROOMS, ETC.</u>				
	<u>SUPPLEMENTARY PREAMBLES</u>				
	<u>Fixing</u>				
	Items described as "nailed" shall be deemed to be fixed with hardened steel nails or pins, or to be shot-pinned, to brickwork or concrete				
	Items described as "plugged" shall be deemed to include screwing to fibre, plastic or metal plugs at not exceeding 500mm centres, and where described as "bolted", the bolts have been given elsewhere				
	<u>Joinery</u>				
	Descriptions of frames shall be deemed to include frames, transoms, rails, etc.				
	Descriptions of hardwood joinery shall be deemed to include sinking and pelleting heads and nuts of bolts				
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
	<u>Decorative thermosetting plastic laminate covering</u> Laminate covering shall be glued under pressure and edge strips of same shall be butt jointed at junctions with adjacent similar finish <u>General</u> The following cupboard fittings have been given as complete units, i.e. the components of the units have not been given separately. Descriptions of such units shall, therefore, be deemed to include all components, assembling, housing, notching, glueing, blocking, planting-on and screwing with countersunk screws, edge strips, thermosetting plastic laminate, glass, ironmongery, metalwork, paint or varnish finishes, etc. Prices are to include for all necessary filler pieces against walls, etc. <u>References</u> References given in descriptions refer to the respective types of fittings detailed on the architect's drawing(s) numbered: DWG CS02_5.04 accompanying these bills of quantities for tender purposes <u>Kitchen cupboards, etc.</u> 4.54 1200mm long x 600mm wide x 900mm high Kitchen cabinet <u>Bedroom cupboards, etc.</u> 4.55 900mm long x 600mm wide x 2100mm high standard built-in cupboard, white melamine finish, with two impact edge doors supported with adjustable hinges, half cupboard hanging space and other half with 3 adjustable shelves and top shelf spanning length of the cupboard, aluminium clothes rail fixed within hanging space, 96mm long stainless steel bar hollow handle fixed to both doors				
	Carried Forward				

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
<u>IRONMONGERY</u>					
<u>LOCKS</u>					
<u>ASSA ABLOY Gower or similar approved</u>					
4.56	Two lever lockset (Code: CZ682-24-95) with chrome handle and zinc backplate	no	3		
4.57	Four lever lockset (Code: CZ682-24-61) with chrome handle and zinc backplate	no	2		
<u>DIVIDING STRIPS</u>					
4.58	10mm M-trim aluminium straight edge fixed in floor screed for exterior doors. Size to accommodate tile and screed thickness	no	2		
<u>SUNDRY ITEMS</u>					
4.59	44x17mm hardwood meranti weatherbar	no	1		
4.60	75mm chrome plated barrel bolts (External door)	no	2		
4.61	Black rubber door stopper plugged and screwed to floor	no	2		
<u>COVER STRIPS</u>					
4.62	100x1.6mm thick expansion joint galvanised pressed metal cover profile screwed to one side of the wall with wall plug (500 c/c) (external walls)	m	15		
4.63	90mm wide expansion joint aluminium cover profile with stainless steel spring clips (internal walls)	m	6		
4.64	90mm wide expansion joint aluminium cover profile with stainless steel spring clips (internal wall corners)	m	25		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
<u>METALWORK</u>					
<u>SUPPLEMENTARY PREAMBLES</u>					
<u>Descriptions</u>					
Descriptions of bolts shall be deemed to include nuts and washers					
Descriptions of expansion anchors and bolts and chemical anchors and bolts shall be deemed to include nuts, washers and mortices in brickwork or concrete					
<u>PRESSED STEEL DOOR FRAMES</u>					
<u>1,2mm Double Rebated frames suitable for 110mm brick walls</u>					
4.65	Frame for door 813 x 2032mm high	no	3		
<u>1,6mm Rebated frames suitable for 230mm brick walls</u>					
4.66	Frame for door 813 x 2032mm high	no	2		
<u>STEEL WINDOWS, DOORS, ETC</u>					
<u>Steel Awning Type Residential</u>					
4.67	Window type TD57S5 size 1511 x 1559mm high (W1)	no	3		
4.68	Window type NCT1S size 533 x 949mm high (W2)	no	1		
4.69	Window type NCTX7S size 1023 x 959mm high (W3)	no	1		
<u>PLASTERING</u>					
<u>SCREEDS</u>					
<u>1:3 Cement screed steel floated</u>					
4.70	25mm Thick to floors	m²	43		
<u>PLASTERING</u>					
<u>INTERNAL PLASTER</u>					
<u>1:5 Cement plaster on brickwork</u>					
4.71	On walls including all narrow widths, etc	m²	125		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
TILING					
	<u>Floor tiling (Allow R250.00/m² for purchasing and delivery of tiles to site excluding VAT) fixed to screed (screed measured elsewhere) with approved tile adhesive and grouted with tinted tile grout</u>				
4.72	For floors with PEI Class 4 rating size: 330 x 330mm	m ²	43		
4.74	E.O item above for bath wall	m ²	1		
4.74	E.O item above for 100mm high skirting	m	46		
	<u>Wall tiling (Allow R150.00/m² for purchasing and delivery of tiles to site excluding VAT) fixed to plaster (plaster measured elsewhere) with approved tile adhesive and grouted with white cement</u>				
4.75	For walls with PEI Class 1 rating size: 200 x 300mm	m ²	4		
	<u>Genesis interior PVC movement and perimeter joint (Colour: dark grey) (Code: MLB100.35), 9 x 10mm on ceramic floor securely bedded in adhesive with 2-3mm grouting gap.</u>				
4.76	For floors	m	19		
PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE					
<u>SUPPLEMENTARY PREAMBLES</u>					
<u>Note:</u> Refer to drawings for specification of plumbing fittings, etc Plumbing measured in elements (plumbing points) and shall be priced accordingly. Prices must include for supply and installation of all fittings, taps, supply and discharge piping from the fittings to the perimeter of the building complete (Including fixed to the exterior of the building and above NGL). Supply and discharge piping from the perimeter of the building (Below NGL) up to the municipal connection, will be measured separately, and must be priced accordingly. The external supply and discharge piping must include all items such as, excavation, bedding, backfilling, pipe fittings, manholes, etc complete (All piping below NGL)					
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
	<u>Plumbing points for 1 house</u> (Refer to Dwg CS02_2.02, CS02_2.03 & CS02_4.05)				
4.77	WC	no	1		
4.78	WHB	no	1		
4.79	Sink (Including built into kitchen countertop)	no	1		
4.80	Bath	no	1		
4.81	100 litre water cylinder with 1000x1500mm high solar panel complete, including all pipework, valves, pressure reducing valves, to minimum SANS standard (SANS 0254, 10400XA specification, etc.)	no	1		
	<u>External supply and discharge piping, etc</u>				
	<u>Note:</u> Water piping shall have a minimum cover of 600mm Sewer piping shall have a minimum cover of 600mm				
4.82	20mm Dia HDPE water supply in ground	m	25		
4.83	110mm Dia uPVC sewer pipe in ground (all depths) (Including rodding eye at head of drain and inspection eye at each junction. Incl. marker blocks for each). Min 1:40 falls	m	25		
4.84	15mm Brass wall mounted hose bibtap (including gully)	no	1		
<u>ELECTRICAL</u>					
	<u>SUPPLEMENTARY PREAMBLES</u>				
	<u>Specifications, drawings, etc.</u> Tenderers are referred to the specification and drawings: DWG CS02_2.01; CS02_2.03 & CS02_5.04 Accompanying these bills of quantities for the electrical work, for the full descriptions of the following items which are to be read and priced in conjunction with the said specification and drawings				
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
<u>STOVE</u>					
4.85	1. Supply and install complete four plate DEFY 600 4 plate Solid Hob Black (Code: DCB006) or similar approved, including all ducting, wiring, switches to DB board, Certificate of Compliance (COC), etc, this all to the minimum SABS/SANS standards	no	1		
<u>DUCTS FOR ELECTRICAL CABLES</u>					
<u>uPVC pipes cast into raft foundation or surface fixed to brick walls including bends, end caps, etc</u>					
4.86	25mm Dia	m	3		
<u>Extra over pipes for fittings</u>					
4.87	"Prepaid Ready Board" for future electrical installation fixed to wall	no	1		
<u>ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION</u>					
4.88	Electrical Provisional sum complete, including all internal and external up until the boundary of the erf and a COC (Certificate of Compliance), but excluding the prepaid meter and stove	Prov sum	1		13 900.00
4.89	Installation, profit and attendance	%			
4.90	Prepaid meter in conformance with the municipality's requirements	sum	1		
<u>GLAZING</u>					
<u>GLAZING TO STEEL WITH PUTTY</u>					
<u>3mm Clear float glass</u>					
4.91	Panes not exceeding 0,75 m2	m²	6		
<u>4mm Clear float glass</u>					
4.92	Panes exceeding 0,75 m2 and not exceeding 1,5 m2	m²	2.5		
<u>3mm obscured glass</u>					
4.93	Panes not exceeding 0,75 m2	m²	0.6		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
PAINTWORK					
	<u>PAINTWORK ETC TO NEW WORK</u>				
	<u>Note:</u> All paint to be Plascon or other approved and applied in accordance with the manufacturers instruction (To be provided with min of 7 year paint manufacture and labour guarantee)				
	<u>ON PLASTERED WALLS</u>				
	<u>One coat primer and two coats exterior quality PVA emulsion paint</u>				
4.94	House number 200mm high of not exceeding 7 digits on walls (price to be for 7 digits)	no	1		
	<u>One coat plaster primer, two coats Plascon wall & all Acrylic or similar approved</u>				
4.95	On internal walls	m ²	108		
	<u>One coat plaster primer, two coats Plascon wall & all Acrylic or similar approved</u>				
4.96	On internal bathroom walls	m ²	18		
	<u>ON METAL</u>				
	<u>One coat red oxide primer, one undercoat and two coats enamel paint on steel</u>				
4.97	On door frames	m ²	11		
4.98	On windows (both sides measured)	m ²	18		
	<u>ON WOOD</u>				
	<u>One coat wood primer and two coats enamel paint</u>				
4.99	On internal doors	m ²	11		
4.100	On cornices	m	52		
	<u>Three coats clear suede polyurethane varnish</u>				
4.101	On external doors	m ²	8		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
4.102	<u>ON GYPSUM CEILINGS</u> Undercoat and two coats white interior PVA paint to On Gypsum ceilings	m ²	42		
4.103	<u>ON GYPSUM CEILINGS</u> One coat universal undercoat and two coats eggshell enamel paint On fascia and barge boards	m ²	21		
EXTERNAL WORKS					
4.104	<u>Car Port</u> 6300x3300x average 2600mm high standard mono pitch car port with four 75x75mmx2.5mm mild steel square hollow section columns cast in concrete footings (min of 15Mpa & 600mm deep) and 150x50x50x3mm thick cold formed lipped channel purlin rafters and rafter beams welded to steel posts. Poles and frame to be painted with manufacturers red oxide primer, universal under coat and two coats gloss enamel. 0.58mm thick Galvanised Z275 widespan roof sheeting to be fixed to the steel structure at 1500mm centres using 57mm top speed screw fasteners which are capable of sustaining the severe winds Tenderers are referred to the specification and drawings: DWG CS02_5.01	no	1		
4.105	<u>Clear and grub</u> Clear and grub area for Parking areas	m ²	46		
4.106	<u>Remove Topsoil</u> Excavate in all materials and dispose at site established by the Contractor	m ³	4		
4.107	<u>Treatment to roadbed</u> Roadbed preparation and compaction of material to Minimum of 93% mod AASHTO density	m ³	4		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
	<u>Subbase - Construct layerworks with commercial material supplied by the contractor</u>				
4.108	G5 Subbase Compacted to 95% mod AASHTO density 150mm Thick	m³	4		
	<u>Processing</u>				
4.109	Process layerwork material by the following process Stabilization (all layer thicknesses)	m³	4		
	<u>Stabilization Agent</u>				
4.110	Portland cement	ton	0.3		
	<u>Edge Restraints</u>				
4.111	Cast-in-situ strength concrete 30Mpa edge beam size 150mm wide x 150mm high, wood floated on top, angle rounded edges and 10mm thick jointex expansion joints at 3m centres Dwg CS02_5.01	m	19		
	<u>Interlocking precast concrete paving</u>				
4.112	Grey interlocking precast concrete paving blocks type SA, including all cutting of units to fit between edge restraints, laid on and including 20mm riversand, compacted and plastersand broomed into joints on completion Dwg CS02_5.01	m²	18		
	<u>Soil poisoning</u>				
4.113	Under paved areas	m²	22		
	<u>Fencing</u>				
	<u>Fencing supplied and fixed complete, including all posts, stays, standards, droppers, straining wire, excavation, backfilling, concrete bases, etc to match existing previously constructed military veteran units</u> - 75x75x2.5mm galvanised chain link fence - Timber corner posts with steel stay - Steel Y standard between corner posts - Steel droppers between steel Y standards Tenderers are referred to the specification and drawings: Dwg CS02_5.03				
4.114	1200mm High fencing on erf boundary complete	m	70		
Carried Forward					

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

SCHEDULE 2					
Item	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate (R)	Amount (R)
Brought Forward					
4.115	<u>Gate</u> <u>Double leaf gate supplied and installed complete, including all posts, stays, vertical and horizontal bars, hinges, locking devices, excavation, backfilling, concrete bases, painting, etc to match existing previously constructed military veteran units</u> - 75x75x2.5mm galvanised chain link fence Tenderers are referred to the specification and drawings: DWG CS02_5.03 3000 x 1200mm high	no	1		
<u>BILL NO 4</u> <u>MILITARY VETERAN HOUSE (FOR 1 HOUSE)</u>					
Carried forward to Summary of Bill of Quantities					R

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Item	Payment Reference	Description	Unit	Qty	Rate		Amount
5.1 <							

Item	Payment Reference	Description	Unit	Qty	Billing amounts	
					Rate	Amount
		Brought Forward				-
5.11		(b) Supply and install 2 Way meter kiosk as per specification completely wired to accommodate two house connections with 80A 10kA MCB each included, prepaid meters excluded and one100A 10kA MCB included (servicing the kiosk across the road with one 25mm² 4-core Cu cable)	No	2		-
5.12		(c) Install Meters in meter kiosks. Meters to be supplied from Sol Plaatje at contractors cost	No	12		-
5.13		(d) Supply and Install 63 Amp Double pole Isolators at each house	No	12		-
		CABLE EXCAVATIONS				
5.14		(a) Excavated Cable trenches as specified, re-use excavated material (sifted) to backfill and compact. Excavations to be 1m deep x 0.4m wide.	m	155		-
5.15		(b) Excavated Service Cable trenches from meter box to house, re-use excavated material (sifted) to backfill and compact. Excavations to be 0.6m deep x 0.3m wide. Re-use excavated material to backfill	m	360		-
5.16		(c) Supply and install imported soil for backfilling extra.	m³	30		-
		ROAD CROSSINGS & SLEEVES				
5.17		(a) Open existing paved road	m	20		-
5.18		(b) Backfill and repair paved road	m	20		-
5.19		(c) Install 160mm Dia. sleeve pipes (only where damaged)	m	20		-
		TEST & COMMISSIONING				
5.20		(a) LV cable phasing test	No	5		-
5.21		(b) LV cable insulation resistance test	No	5		-
		WATER AND SOIL REHABILITATION				
5.22		(a) Pump water from trenches	No	1		-
5.23		(b) Excavate and remove contaminated soil to an approved dumping site	m³	70		-
5.24		(c) Imoprt approved fill for cable trench	m³	160		-
		BILL NO 5 ELECTRICAL INFRASTRUCTURE				
Carried forward to Summary of Bills						

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C2.3 Summary of Bill of Quantities

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2



**The Northern Cape
Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs**

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

CONTRACT: NC/17/2026 - CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES

Summary of Bills

			12 Houses
Bill No.	Description	Price per house	Amount
	Schedule 1: Preliminaries		
1	Preliminaries (all houses)		
2	Provisional Sums (all houses)		
3	Dayworks (all houses)		
	Sub-Total of Schedule 1		
	Schedule 2: Building Work		
4	Cost of 1 house carried forward from Bill no.4		
	Multiply the value of bill 4 by 12 Houses		
	Sub-Total of Schedule 2		
	Schedule 3: Electrical Infrastructure		
5	Electrical Infrastructure		
	Sub-Total of Schedule 3		
	Total of Schedule 1, 2 & 3 above		
	Contingency (allow 5% of Total of Schedule 1, 2 & 3 above)		
	Total		
	Zero Value Added Tax (Zero rated)		0.00
	Total Amount of Tender Carried Forward to Form of Tender		

Bankers Details :

Contractor's Name: _____

Name reflected on bank statement: _____

Bank: _____

Branch: _____

Account Number: _____

Cheque Acc ☐ or Savings Acc ☐

Signature :

By Tenderer : _____

Company Name : _____

Date : _____

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Part C3 Scope of Work

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

SCOPE OF WORKS

CONTENTS LIST

Section	Description	Page No
Section C3.1	Description of the Works.....	C3.1-1
Section C3.1.1	Employer's Objectives	C3.1-1
Section C3.1.2	Overview of the Works.....	C3.1-1
Section C3.1.3	Scope of the Works.....	C3.1-2
Section C3.1.4	Location of the Works	C3.1-2
Section C3.1.5	Handing over of completed houses.....	C3.1-2
Section C3.2	Engineering.....	C3.2-1
Section C3.2.1	Employer's Design.....	C3.2-1
Section C3.2.2	Drawings.....	C3.2-1
Section C3.3	Procurement.....	C3.3-1
Section C3.3.1	Procurement Principles.....	C3.3-1
Section C3.3.2	Contract Personnel	C3.3-2
Section C3.3.3	Temporary Workforce	C3.3-3
Section C3.3.4	Labour Intensive Construction	C3.3-4
Section C3.3.5	Subcontracting.....	C3.3-4
Section C3.4	Construction	C3.4-1
Section C3.4.1	Standard Specifications	C3.4.1-1

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2



Section C3.4.2	Variations and Additions to Standard and Particular Specifications.....	C3.4.2-1
Section C3.5	Management.....	C3.5-1

END OF SECTION

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C3.1 Description of the Works

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK*

C3.1 DESCRIPTION OF THE WORKS

C3.1.1 Employers Objectives

The 'Sol Plaatje Local Municipality Integrated Development Plan notes that the municipality is confronted with a housing backlog of approximately 8447 (formal) and 6347 (informal) housing units as a result of the continuous influx of people into the area.

In light of the above the Lerato Park Integrated Housing Project in Sol Plaatje (Kimberley) aims to address the significant housing backlog in Sol Plaatje while also meeting the growing demand for free market housing and commercial opportunities. Some 4500 units which include the latest trends of integrated property development are expected to be delivered through this project.

The land earmarked for the development was acquired by the Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs, who in turn transferred the property to the Sol Plaatje Local Municipality.

C3.1.2 Overview of the Works

This contract is for the construction of Subsidised Top Structures (12 Military Veteran Houses) for Lerato Park Integrated Housing development (Phase 1.1). The contract comprises raft foundations and top structures for twelve (12) Military Veteran Houses.

Refer to site layout plan.

C3.1.3 Scope of the Works

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Total number of Military Veteran Houses = 12 units

The following work is included in this contract:

- a.) Site clearance
- b.) Excavation
- c.) G5 Platform
- d.) Concrete raft foundation
- e.) 50m² top structure
- f.) Electrical work
- g.) Plumbing
- h.) Build-in cupboards (kitchen and bedrooms)
- i.) Stove
- j.) Carport with interlock paving
- k.) Fence
- i.) The installation of the electrical infrastructure

The Employer reserves the right to omit portions of the work from the contract if sufficient funding cannot be made available and/or if sites are unavailable due to illegal occupation. (Sol Plaatje Municipality is currently in the process of removing the illegal occupants).

The work will be carried out in one phase which will have an agreed commencement and completion date and the contractor will have to plan his work accordingly. These dates will be subject to change as circumstances may dictate. The agreed completion time of the works will be binding and late completion will be subject to penalty for delay.

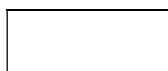
C3.1.4 Location of the Works

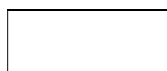
The proposed development site is located to the North of Kimberley, in the Northern Cape Province, within the Frances Baard District Municipal area and within the borders of the Sol Plaatje Local Municipality. It is situated between the townships of Galeshewe and Roodepan (see locality plan).

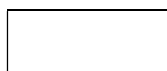
C3.1.5 Handing over of completed houses

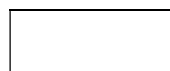
Groups of completed houses will only be taken over by the Employer or its nominee if they are in groups with no construction activities within the group of houses. The houses must be safe to occupy without interference from the construction activities.

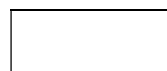
END OF SECTION

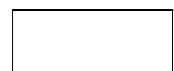

Contractor


Witness 1


Witness 2


Employer


Witness 1


Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C3.2 Engineering

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK*

C3.2 ENGINEERING

C3.2.1 Employer's Design

The Tenderer may submit alternative offers for designs prepared by him subject to the conditions specified in the Contract Data.

C3.2.2 Drawings

Drawings are bound in Volume 2 at the back of Volume 1.

The drawings included in the document is standard drawings for the previous houses build and are only for tender purposes and the contractor will be responsible for the house plans of each house and the submission thereof to Sol Plaatje Municipality for approval.

The Contractor shall be entitled to receive free of charge, two full size and one A3 copies of each such drawings and to receive, at the cost of reproduction, such additional copies as he shall reasonably require.

One copy of all drawings shall be kept on the Site and be available for perusal by the Engineer / Principal agent or any person authorised by him.

The Contractor shall, in accordance with the Engineer / Principal agent's instructions, maintain a register on the Site of all drawings and revisions thereof in the chronological order in which they are delivered to him.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C3.3 Procurement

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

C3.3 PROCUREMENT

C3.3.1 Procurement Principles

The Employer decided to adopt the Standard of Uniformity in Construction Procurement published by the Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB) and including Procurement Policy of COGHSTA for his procurement process.

The Standard for Uniformity in Construction Procurement establishes minimum requirements that:

- promote cost efficiencies through the adoption of a uniform structure for procurement documents, standard component documents and generic solicitation procedures;
- provide transparent, fair and equitable procurement methods and procedures in critical areas in the solicitation process;
- ensure that the forms of contract that are used are fair and equitable for all the parties to a contract; and
- enable risk, responsibilities and obligations to be clearly identified.

Procurement Policy of COGHSTA

The Procurement Policy of COGHSTA ensures further that standards of behaviour, ethics and accountability which it require of its officials and professional service providers are met, and also makes a strong statement of the Department's commitment to a procurement system which enables the emergence of sustainable small, medium and micro businesses which will add to the commonwealth of our Province and the achievement of enhanced economic and social well-being of all its citizens.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

This policy based on the following five principles to ensure a sustainable procurement system:

- Value for Money;
- Open and Effective Competition;
- Ethics and Fair Dealing;
- Accountability and Reporting;
- Equity.

This policy is in line with the Preferential Procurement Policy Regulations, 2011 promulgated in terms of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999.

In the event of any ambiguity/discrepancy between the above mentioned policies, the CIDB policy will take precedence?

C3.3.2 Contractors Personnel

The Contractor shall limit the utilisation of his permanently employed personnel to that of key personnel only on the Works, as defined below, and shall execute and complete the Works utilising a temporary workforce employed directly by the Contractor and/or by his sub-contractors, using the assistance of the Labour Desk(s), from the various communities that are established in proximity to the Works or which will be consumers from the Scheme.

Without derogating from the Contractor's obligations to complete the Works within the specified time for completion in terms of the General Conditions of Contract, the numbers in each category of the Contractor's key personnel, as stated by the Contractor in the Returnable Schedules, will be strictly controlled during the contract period and any increase in numbers will be subject to the prior approval of the Employer.

Key personnel means all contracts managers, site agents, site clerks, materials and survey technicians, quantity surveyors, trainers, supervisors, foremen, skilled plant operators, brick layers, welders, shutter hands and the like, and all other personnel in the permanent employ of the Contractor or his sub-contractors who possess special skills, and/or who play key roles within the Contractor's or his subcontractor's operations.

The Engineer may at his discretion, upon receipt of a written and fully motivated application from the Contractor, and where he deems the circumstances so warrant, authorise in writing that the Contractor may utilise in the execution of the Works, workers not being his key personnel but who are in his permanent employ. Without limiting the generality of application of this sub-clause, circumstances which may be considered by

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

the Engineer/Principal Agent to warrant authorization of the use of the Contractor's permanent employees other than key personnel, include:

- a) The unavailability from local sources of sufficient numbers of temporary workers and/or sub-contractors to execute the Works, provided always that the Contractor has satisfied the Engineer that he has exercised his best endeavours and taken all reasonable actions to recruit sufficient temporary workers and sub-contractors from local sources.
- b) The unavailability within the temporary worker pool and/or from subcontractor sources available to the Contractor in terms of the Contract, of sufficient skills necessary to execute the Works or specific portions thereof, in situations where the completion period allowed in the Contract is insufficient to facilitate the creation of the necessary skills through the provision of suitable training as contemplated in the Contract;
- c) Any other circumstances which the Engineer/Principal Agent may deem as constituting a warrant.

C3.3.3 Temporary Workforce

The Contractor shall employ labour from the local communities through the Labour Desk(s). Accordingly, the workforce that is employed on Site shall consist of local residents, except for approved key staff in the permanent employ of the Contractor, to the maximum extent that is compatible with the requirements of Clause C3.3.2.

The Labour Desk(s) shall assist in identifying available local labour and, where available, semi-skilled labour as well as local sub-contractors. The Labour Desks shall also assist and advise regarding conditions of employment, minimum wages, disputes and disciplinary procedures. The function of the Labour Desk(s) shall however in no way diminish the responsibilities of the Contractor in terms of the Conditions of Contract.

Although the Contractor shall adhere to the statutory minimum wage rates, he is however at liberty to negotiate additional incentive payments based on performance.

A contract of employment or subcontract should be signed between the Contractor and each of his employees or sub-contractors, as the case may be. Likewise contracts of employment must be entered into between each such sub-contractor, and each of the

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

specific subcontractor's employees. Employment and subcontract agreements shall make clear reference to at least the following conditions:

- The minimum agreed wage rate per hour in respect of labourers;
- The agreed pay rate per unit of production where applicable;
- UIF and WCA payments;
- Minimum working hours per day;
- Start and end times of a daily shift;
- Lunch break times;
- Company Policy regarding :
 - Rain time
 - Sickness and absenteeism
 - Disciplinary matters
 - Grievances
- Method and frequency of payment;
- Work clothes and safety equipment to be issued.

C3.3.4 Labour Intensive Construction

Labour Intensive Construction shall mean the economically efficient employment of as great a portion of labour as is technically feasible to produce a standard of construction as demanded by the Specifications with completion by the Due Completion Date, thus the effective substitution of labour for equipment.

Appropriate portions of the Works included in the Contract shall be executed using labour intensive construction methods. These portions of the Works shall be constructed utilising only locally employed labour and/or the labour of local sub-contractors, supplemented to the extent necessary and unavoidable by the Contractors key personnel as provided for in clause C3.3.2, unless otherwise instructed by the Engineer.

C3.3.5 Subcontracting

C3.3.5.1 The Contractor shall sub-let at least 25% of the value of the works to local small sub-contractors. Preference must also be given to women and youth. The extent to which the Contractor meets these targets will be monitored by the Engineer / Principal agent for the duration of the Contract. The Contractor will be required to report on the attainment of local content targets as part of the monthly progress report prepared by the Contractor and submitted to the Engineer / Principal agent. The report format will be provided to the Contractor. The Contractor shall submit documentary proof of expenditure on local

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

content within the targeted categories, which proof will be examined by the Engineer / Principal agent and certified, referred for further information or rejected based on the merits thereof.

- C3.3.5.2 Tenderers should enter their firm undertakings for local content into section T2.2.8 of the tender documents. The successful tenderer will be required to meet its firm undertakings for local content. Failure to meet these targets will entitle the Employer to claim local content damages in accordance with the Conditions of Contract.

For every percentage of the 25% to be subcontracted that the Contractor defaults, the Contractor would have to pay penalties to the value of 0.1% of the total contract value excluding VAT.

- C3.3.5.3 The Contractor shall be responsible for all work carried out by sub-contractors on his behalf. The Engineer / Principal agent will not liaise directly with any such sub-contractor, nor will he become involved in any problems and/or disputes related to payments, programming, workmanship, etc, unless provided for in the Conditions of Contract. Such problems and/or disputes shall remain the sole concern of the Contractor and his sub-contractors.

- C3.3.5.4 The Engineer / Principal agent may at his discretion, upon receipt of a written and fully motivated application from the Contractor, and where he deems the circumstances so warrant, and provided always that the Contractor has complied fully and in all respects with the provisions of the Contract pertaining to subletting to local sub-contractors or has utilised his best endeavours to comply therewith, authorise in writing that the Contractor may employ local residents in terms of clause C3.3.1.1 with the sole intent of executing on-the-job training of such local residents to suitable levels of skill that will enable the Contractor to sub-let appropriate portions of the Works as specified in clause C3.3.1.1 to such local residents.

Without limiting the generality of application of this sub clause, circumstances which may be considered by the Engineer / Principal agent to warrant such authorization include:

- a) non-receipt of valid or acceptable tenders/quotations from local sub-contractors;
- b) serious default or failure of appointed local sub-contractors;

The Engineer / Principal agent shall not grant such authority in cases where it may reasonably be concluded on the available evidence that the invitation of further

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

tenders/quotations in accordance with the terms of the Contract is likely to result in the successful completion of the portions of the Works concerned by local sub-contractors.

The Engineer / Principal agent shall monitor progress achieved with subcontractor training, and successful completion of this training shall be subject to his approval or instruction. The Contractor shall tender rates for the training of sub-contractors and labour.

- C3.3.5.5 The Contractor shall approach the Labour Desk that is established for purposes of the Contract for assistance and advice regarding conditions of employment, minimum wages, disputes and disciplinary procedures in respect of local sub-contractors.

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C3.4 Construction

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C3.4.1 Standard Specifications

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

C3.4.1 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

C3.4.1.1 THE JBCC® GENERAL PRELIMINARIES (EDITION 6.2 - MAY 2018)
(Applicable to schedule no. 1 in the bills of quantities/schedules)

The JBCC® General Preliminaries (Edition 6.2 - May 2018) prepared and published by the Joint Building Contracts Committee for use with the JBCC Principal Building Agreement (6.2 Edition - May 2018). This document shall be applicable to schedule no. 1 in the bill of quantities.

All subcontractors (If any) shall include their Preliminary and General costs within their rates. Preliminary and general shall not be paid separately to any subcontractor.

C3.4.1.2 BUILDING WORK
(Applicable to Schedule No. 2 in the bills of quantities/schedules)

The Model Preambles for Trades (2017 edition) as published by the Association of South African Quantity Surveyors shall be applicable to schedule no. 2 in the bill of quantities.

All work shall be carried out strictly in accordance with:

- The Occupational Health and Safety Act and Regulations (Act no. 85 of 1993 as amended).
- The SANS code of Practice for Wiring of Premises, SANS 10142-1 & 2: 2017 as amended.
- The project -, particular – and/or standard electrical specifications.
- Any municipal by-laws and regulations.
- The local authority requirements. (Sol Plaatje Municipality)

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- All applicable SANS, BS & IEC equipment specifications.

The various documents listed in section C3.4.1 shall be treated as mutually explanatory. However, should any requirement of section C3.4.3 conflict with any requirement of the Standardised Specifications or with any requirement of the Particular Specifications, then the requirement of section C3.4.3 shall prevail.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C3.4.2 Variations and Additions to Standard and Particular Specifications

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

**C3.4.2 VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD AND PARTICULAR
SPECIFICATIONS**

C3.4.2.1 Security on constructions site

Security shall be provided by the Contractor for the works and his/her contractor site camp. On the receipt of the Practical Completion Certificate (JBCC series 2000, Edition 5, Principal Building Agreement) for a phase of units (individual random houses will not be considered for takeover), the contractor will at his own expense provide security for the period of up to two weeks up until the occupant of the unit has moved in or taken possession of the unit (The longer period of time will take preference). After two weeks of an occupant not taking possession of the house, the contractor will only then be entitled to a day rate (Preliminaries) for security which should be sufficient for the amount of 55 units. The security shall include for two security guards from 18:00pm to 6:00am and one security guard from 6:00am to 18:00pm. The limit of such security shall be to the employer's discretion. Payment per one day will be based on a 24 (twenty four) hour shift in conjunction with the above mentioned times.

C3.4.2.2 Dayworks

The Engineer may schedule and require unit rates for estimated numbers of hours of daywork for various classes of labour, materials and plant likely to be ordered under daywork during the course of the contract.

The unit rates for labour shall be the net cost of labour and shall cover overhead charges and profit, site supervision and site staff, insurances, holidays with pay, and use and maintenance of tools and equipment.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

The rates for plant hire shall, in addition, cover the cost of plant operators, consumables, fuel and maintenance.

All rates or allowances shall also cover travelling allowances or travelling costs (transport of men by Contractor's transport or transport hired or paid for by the Contractor), lodging allowances and any other emoluments and allowances payable to the workmen.

Material cost shall be the net cost of the material purchased and delivered to site, less any discount. Profit and attendance will be added to the net cost of the material as tendered in the bill of quantities.

Daywork sheets shall be filled in daily and be submitted to the Engineer for approval each day. Daywork sheets not handed in daily for approval will be rejected for payment.

C3.4.2.4 Boundary Pegs and Marking of Stands and Houses

The Contractor is requested to identify each stand with all boundary pegs and mark each stand and house type (one board per stand showing erf and house type) before commencement of construction. The cost of such name boards shall be included in the contractors Preliminaries and General overheads.

If the boundary pegs are not in place at handover of the site to the Contractor, the Contractor must notify the Engineer of such missing pegs, who will arrange for them to be replaced.

Boundary pegs shall be protected by the Contractor during the construction period, and must be handed over to the Employer at completion of the project. Any missing pegs must be replaced by an approved Surveyor at the Contractor's expense.

The identification plate will consist of a 300 x 300mm weatherproof board fixed to a metal standard driven into the ground in the middle of the site at the street façade.

The identification plates must be maintained during construction and replaced if stolen or damaged, and handed over to the Employer with the handover of the houses at the completion of the project.

The marking of the stands and houses is vital in the identification of the houses for monthly payments and monitoring of progress on the site, and a penalty of R500-00 per

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

missing stand and house marking will be imposed throughout the construction period. Missing markings shall be replaced within 24 hours of finding to be missing.

C3.4.2.4 Engineers Site Office Facility

The following new equipment shall be supplied to the Engineer and maintained during the Construction period (Costs for such items shall be priced within the Preliminary and General):

1. 1m Stanley spirit level (2 of)
2. Calibrated dumpy level and staff (1 of)
3. Roll of "fish line" (10 rolls)
4. 20m Stanley measuring tape (2 of)
5. 5m Stanley measuring tape (5 of)
6. DCP (1 of)

C3.4.2.5 NHBRC Registration

The Contractor is to comply with all NHBRC regulations. House enrolment to be paid by the Employer.

C3.4.2.6 Connection of Water and Sewer Piping to Existing Reticulation

Water connection piping from the house must be connected to the existing reticulation on the street front façade of the erven. Drawings showing positions and depths of connection points will be made available to the Contractor.

All water pipes installed in the ground must have a minimum cover of 600mm.

Sewer connection piping from the house must be connected to the existing reticulation on the street front façade of the erven. Drawings showing positions and depths of connection points will be made available to the Contractor.

All sewer pipes installed in the ground must have a minimum cover of 600mm.

C3.4.2.7 Platform for raft foundation

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

The contractor shall make himself/herself aware of the site conditions, this including the geotechnical conditions (Section C4.2 – Geotechnical report) (Example of Rock, Turf, etc); the slope of the ground, etc. The contractor shall ensure that all relevant costs involved with the item “Platform for raft foundation” shall cover any and all possible costs, including cut to fill, cut to spoil (off site), filling of imported material (Including the supply and delivery of imported material). No claims will be entertained with regards to additional costs incurred by the contractor due to the geotechnical conditions.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

PSES PROJECT ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

PSES1 GENERAL INFORMATION TO CONTRACTOR

PSES1.1 Service Conditions

All equipment and materials shall be rated for operation under the following conditions:

Electrical

Voltages Primary	:	MV 11kV
Voltage Secondary	:	LV 400/231V
Frequency	:	50Hz
Phases	:	3
Rupturing capacity	:	11kV: 250 MVA
	:	400/231V: 10 kA

Environment

Altitude	:	1 500m
Average maximum temperature	:	40° C
Average minimum temperature	:	-10° C
Average relative humidity	:	80% at 35° C
Lightning	:	Severe

PSES1.2 Main Supply

The supply to this phase of the proposed town will be obtained from the existing Midlands substation to the North of the development.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PSES1.3 Standards and Specifications

All materials and equipment supplied under this Contract must be new and of the best quality available.

All materials must comply with the requirements of the latest editions of the relevant SABS, NRS, Specifications and the standard specifications in the document and in accordance to Sol Plaatje Municipal standards.

PSES1.4 Normative References

The Contractor will be responsible to ensure that the Contract Works comply in full with the requirements laid down by:-

The Occupational Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993

The Code of Practice for the Wiring of Premises SANS 10142: Part 1 and 2; as amended

The relevant regulations of the Sol Plaatje Local Municipality

Street lights regulation SANS 1063

PSES1.5 Working Drawings

The Contractor shall, furnish the Engineer with a full set of working drawings showing the exact dimensions and details of equipment to be manufactured.

The drawings must be approved by the Engineer before manufacture of the equipment commences.

PSES1.6 Erection

A price shall be quoted for the supply, delivery, off-loading, erecting and commissioning of all material, equipment and underground cables to be provided under this Contract. Erection shall include cabling, connecting-up and completing the electrical connections between the several pieces of apparatus forming the complete installation.

All the necessary installation equipment and tools included together with safety equipment, lifting tackle, staging, etc., for off-loading, handling and installation of the equipment shall be supplied and upon completion of the Contract, again be removed from site.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PSES1.7 Basis of Tender

The Contractor must provide for all that is necessary for the completion of the entire project. Although prices shall be based on the major items listed in the schedules forming part of this specification, the contractor shall ensure that he allows for all the ancillary equipment, installation material and items necessary for completion of the project.

PSES1.8 As-Built Drawings

On completion of the Contract, the Contractor must supply the Engineer with a full set of "As Installed" drawings, before final payment certificate will be submitted. These drawings must conform to the requirements of the Engineer.

For this purpose the Contractor must complete drawings in an electronic format compatible with AutoCAD or Micro stations to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Final payment certificate will not be released if these drawings have not been submitted to the Engineer and if they do not conform to the Engineer's requirements.

If the Contractor still fails to complete the above drawings an amount of R10 000.00 shall be subtracted from his contract and the Engineer will complete the drawings.

PSES1.9 Tests

The Contractor must allow for a complete set of tests of the equipment as prescribed by the Engineer and required by the municipality. These tests shall be carried out at the premises of the manufacturer and on site under the supervision of the Engineer or his representative.

PSES1.10 Signs and Notices

All the necessary signs and notices according to the Safety Act and the Municipality prescriptions must be provided on the outside of the equipment, i.e. miniature substations, kiosks, switchgear

Contractor shall provide samples of all signs and notices for approval by the Engineer before ordering the material.

PSES1.11 Damage to Other Services

The Contractor shall assume full responsibility in case he or any person in his service is directly or indirectly responsible for any damages caused to other services already installed (water, sewerage, storm water, roads, surveyors' pegs, etc.) Any such damage shall immediately be reported to the engineer and maintenance department of the municipality.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

The Contractor shall be held fully responsible for the repair of such damage to the satisfaction of the Engineer and the relevant service's authority. The costs for the repair of such damage shall be borne by the Contractor. Any claims monetary or time wise by the Contractor in this regard will not be considered.

Should any portion of this contract works of the Contractor be damaged by other official Contractors, the Contractor shall repair such damage at the tendered rate and shall submit full details of such damage to the Engineer within 14 days of the event, so that arrangements can be made to recoup such costs from the responsible party. This repair work may only be done on the written instruction from the Engineer.

PSES1.12 Explosives

All government regulations with regard to the transport, storing and handling of explosives shall be strictly adhered to. Blasting shall only commence on prior written instruction from the Engineer.

PSES2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EQUIPMENT

PSES2.1 General

All equipment supplied by the Contractor must be **new**, of the best quality available and must comply with this Specification and the attached specifications in the document and of Sol Plaatje Local Municipality where applicable.

All equipment used in the installation must have the prior approval of the Engineer.

PSES2.2 Instruction Manuals

The Contractor must supply the Engineer with at least three sets of detail mechanical and electrical drawings as well as instructions, maintenance and operational manuals of equipment on completion of the project.

PSES2.3 Inspection

The Contractor shall inform the Engineer of any equipment which is ready for despatch from the manufacturer, in which case the Engineer will arrange for an inspection and witnessing of tests at the factory of the manufacturer if it is deemed necessary. Such notification of the Engineer must be 10 days prior to testing or despatch.

Three copies of all equipment test reports, whether these tests have been carried out in the presence of the Engineer or not, shall accompany the equipment delivery to site and be submitted to the Engineer.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

The Engineer will not do the Contractor's quality control on site, if faults or standards are constantly not at here to the Engineer will invoice time and travelling at standard ECSA rates, from the Contractor for unnecessary inspections and tests.

The next inspection shall only be arranged after payment of the Engineer's invoice.

PSES2.4 Interchange-ability

All items of similar equipment supplied under this contract must be identical and completely interchange-able internal to the Town as well as with Existing equipment of Sol Plaatje Local Municipality.

PSES2.5 Commissioning

The Contractor shall be responsible for the testing and commissioning of the complete installation. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer, in writing, 14 days prior to the abovementioned test to allow him to make the necessary arrangements.

PSES3 BULK SUPPLY TO LERATO PARK

PSES3.1 General

Not applicable under this contract as no bulk supply needs to be constructed.

PSES4 NEW PRIMARY SUBSTATIONS

PSES4.1 General

No primary substation buildings will be built under this contract.

PSES4.2 Building Sub-Contractor

Not applicable under this contract as no Primary substations needs to be constructed.

PSES4.3 Standards and requirements

Not applicable under this contract as no Primary substations needs to be constructed.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PSES5 MV-SWITCH GEAR PANELS

PSES5.1 General

No supply and installation of Primary substation MV-Switchgear panels are required under this contract.

PSES6 MINIATURE SUBSTATIONS

PSES6.1 General

No supply and installation of Primary substation MV-Switchgear panels are required under this contract.

PSES 7 METERING KIOSKS

PSES7.1 General

Meter kiosks shall be of the 2-way single door polyethylene or fibreglass type, equal or similar to Greenbro anti vandalised lock, complete with a 300mm plinth (equal than the kiosks used in Phase 1. Contractor shall submit drawing for approval to the Engineer for approval before manufacturing.

Provision shall be made in the kiosks for the following:

- To accommodate the termination of 120mm² Cu cables.
- Cables shall be connected as per drawing 1552.00.VA.07.D017.
- The installation of a 100A, 3 phase MCCB, 10kA to supply the kiosk across the road with a 25mm², 4core Cu cable.
- The kiosks shall accommodate 2 single phase split pre-paid energy meters.
- Labelling of meters and kiosk shall be engraved in 12mm high letters with the number of the stand to which the cables are connected.

PSES7.2 Installation

The meter kiosks shall be installed in the positions as indicated on the drawings.

The meter kiosks shall be installed 300mm from the stand boundary between two stands, with the back side of the kiosk facing the source of the supply.

The meter kiosk shall be installed on a plinth of the same material as the kiosk, 300mm above finishing ground level.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PSES7.3 Metering

The metering kiosk shall provide space for two split pre-paid meters. All consumer connections shall be pre-wired with 16mm² PVC wiring from the 60Amp, 1 pole MCB, 10kA, Curve 1 (orange toggle) to the meter.

PSES8 STREET LIGHTING

PSES8.1 Street Light Poles

No supply and installation of Street Lights are required under this contract.

PSES8.2 Light Fittings

No supply and installation of Street Lights are required under this contract.

PSES 8.3 Streetlight Controller

No supply and installation of Street Lights are required under this contract.

PSES9 PRE-PAID METERING

PSES9.1 General

Pre-paid meters supplied under this contract shall be to Sol Plaatje Municipality Specification.

The Energy Despiser(ED) shall consist of two separate, sealed enclosures. The one unit called Energy Management Unit (EMU) shall contain the kWh metering and control electronics as well as the power disconnecting device. The other unit called the Customer Interface Unit (CIU) shall include a Human machine Interface (HMI) consisting of a keypad and display.

The EMU shall be installed in the metering kiosk and the CIU shall be installed on a bracket mounted next to the ready board inside the dwelling.

EMU/CIU units to be purchased from Sol Plaatje Municipality.

PSES9.2 Energy Despiser Detail

The EMU shall consist of two sections:

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- A “passive” unit containing a terminal block; and
- An “active” unit containing all the ED’s circuitry.

The two units of the ED shall communicate over distances in excess of 100m. Communication shall be via two communication wires inside the house connection cable for each dwelling.

No batteries should be used in the CIU or the EMU.

The EMU shall continue metering and decrementing credit regardless of the state of the communications interface or the CIU. The bi-stable switch will disconnect the load should credit run out, even under these circumstances.

The ED shall comply fully with IEC 1036, SABS 1524 and ESKOM - NRS 009.

PSES9.3 Commissioning

The EMU shall be pre-credit with 5unit for testing and commissioning purposes, and the contractor to train the consumer how to operate the keypad, loading credits and queries.

The EMU shall be pre-set in the factory on a 20Amp load limiting control setting

PSES9.4 Consumer Detail Capturing

The contractor shall complete the Consumer Registration Form with meter number, stand no and consumers personal details and signature with the installation of the ready board.

The contractor to capture the consumer’s data onto a predefined spreadsheet for each stand and provide it to the client electronically, with the signed Consumer Registration Forms for the each customer.

The consumer information shall be provided 7 days before energising the meters, giving the municipality time to register the consumers on the vending system.

PSES10 CABLE TRENCHES AND LAYING OF CABLES

PSES10.1 General

All excavations for cables will be done by the Contractor.

Care should be taken when excavating trenches as the new cables to be installed may follow the routes of existng cables or other services.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

After installation of the cables, the Contractor shall be responsible for backfilling and compaction of all these trenches to original compaction. All excess material shall be removed from site by the contractor. This must be done to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

All cable trenches must be excavated in the positions shown on the drawings. All cables must be installed at a depth of 1.0m. In positions where there are existing services in the areas where the cable trenches must be excavated, the Contractor excavate by hand and must take care not to damage these services.

Where MV cables are installed through stands it must be installed at a depth of 1.5 m with concrete slabs installed 300mm above the cables for the full length through the stand.

It is the responsibility of the Contractor to obtain the service drawings showing the other services. Any damage to these services will be for the Contractor's account.

Excavated earth must in all cases be placed on the "Stand side" of the trenches, and not on the "Street side"

The bottom of the trenches must be even and shall follow the contour of the natural ground level.

All cable trenches must be minimum 450 mm wide, depending on the number of cables to be install.

PSES10.2 Bedding and Covering

Cables must be installed on top of a 100mm layer of approved clean river sand or sifted soil, and must be covered by a further layer of 100mm thick approved river sand or sifted soil before the trench is refilled and compacted. The Contractor is also responsible for the backfilling in layers of 150mm and compaction of the cable trenches to original level and grade of compaction.

After the cable trench has been refilled and compacted, the Contractor must level the sidewalks and shall remove all excess soil and refuse.

Approved Plastic danger tape shall be installed 300mm above the cables in the trenches.

Only primary 11kV cables will be slabled.

PSES10.2 Classification and Definitions of the Nature of the Soil

The nature of the soil, in which cable trenches shall be dug is classified as follows:

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Pickable Soil: Soil that can be loosened and removed without the use of machinery and includes, gravel clay, compacted fill, loose or soft shale, loose “gravel stone” and small rocks

Soft Rock: Rock, hard shale, oukclip or material that can be broken by mechanical means such as jack hammers

Hard Rock: Rock that can only broken by means of explosives

PSES10.3 Tender Price

Tenderers must tender for excavating of the trenches, the refilling of the trenches in the manner specified, the compacting of the trenches, the levelling of the sidewalks and the removal of all excess material.

PSES10.4 Road Crossings

Where the cable routes cross the paved roads, cable sleeves indicated on the drawings, must be installed if required. All the sleeves shall be installed at a depth of 1000mm below final road surface.

In some instances it may be necessary to drill underneath roads to install cables. A rate for this is included in the Schedule of quantities

PSES11 CABLES

The Contractor shall supply and install all the necessary medium voltage (SANS 97 Table 19) and low voltage (SANS 1507-3) cables as required by this document and shown on the drawings.

All cables shall be in accordance with the standard specifications.

Schedule of quantities allow for differnt type and sizes of cables.

PSES12 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

PSES12.1 General

Cables shall be rolled off the cable drums in such a fashion that they do not overrun, not be damaged mechanically or are not exposed to too high tensile stress.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

All medium voltage cables and the heavier low voltage cables shall be supported at sufficient short distances during the entire installation process. Cable rollers shall be used as far as possible.

Where cables have to be pulled through pipes or cable sleeves, suitable cable grips shall be used. Great care shall be taken that the cables are not grazed, stretched, or deformed in any manner.

PSES12.2 Position of cables in Trenches

The cables (medium and low voltage) shall be arranged and spaced as shown on the detailed drawings. All cables shall be spaced at 150mm centres apart and 50mm from the side of the trench.

Whatever the arrangement, the Contractor shall minimize the number of cables crossing each other.

The cables shall be installed in the street reserves in the position shown on the drawings and cross- sections of the roads.

PSES12.3 Cable Crossings

The secondary low voltage cables shall always cross under the other groups of cables.

The main low voltage cable shall always cross above the medium voltage cables, with protective slab between the two cables 100mm above the medium voltage cables.

Contractor to insure the correct and calibrated test instruments are onsite for testing.

Contractor to provide the engineer with yearly calibration certificates of all test instruments and equipment before any testing may commence.

PSES12.4 Loops in Medium Voltage Cables

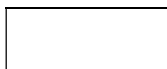
No loops shall be left in the medium voltage cables at mini-sub. Each through joint at the switching substation metering units and fused switches to be installed in future as indicated on the drawings.

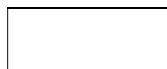
PSES12.5 Cable Markers

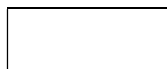
Medium voltage cable markers shall be installed at each through joint.

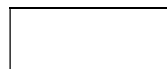
Each high voltage cable marker shall consist of a concrete block with a stainless steel plate on top. The inscription MV-Cable must be engraved on the plate. Where the cable marker indicates a through joint, the inscription MV-Cable Joint shall be provided.

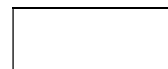
The section of the cable marker protruding from the ground shall be 100mm and painted by means of yellow road marking paint.

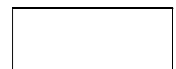

 Contractor


 Witness 1


 Witness 2


 Employer


 Witness 1


 Witness 2

PSES12.6 Inspection of Cables and Cable Trenches

Cables trenches and cables shall be inspected by the Engineer and Municipality before the trenches may be backfilled.

A logbook with three copies per page shall be kept by the Contractor on the site, in which each part of the installation that has been inspected can be recorded after inspection and approval.

PSES13 COMPLETION

Upon completion, any damage which may have been done to any other services, or building work already complete, by the Contractor or his staff, shall be repaired at the Contractor's own expense to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

The Contractor shall clear the entire ground area within and around his yard and contract works, of all the accumulated debris.

PSES14 TESTING OF THE INSTALLATION

The Contractor shall make allowance in his tender for the complete testing and commissioning of the installation. All tests shall be carried out in the presence of the Engineer or his representative. Notice of the envisaged testing date shall be given at least ten days beforehand.

The Contractor shall make allowance in his tender for the supply of all instruments, materials and tests which will be required for the commissioning.

Should any part of the installation fail during a test or should the equipment in the opinion of the Engineer not meet with the requirements, the Contractor shall replace, repair or correct such equipment at his expense, to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

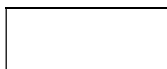
PSES14.1 Medium Voltage Installation Test

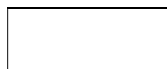
Medium Voltage pressure test as per SABS and/ or BS Specifications on all medium voltage cables, cable joints, cable terminal boxes and mini-sum rings switching units.

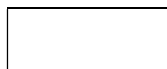
Continuity tests on all medium voltage cables to prove the phase rotation.

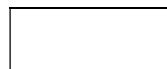
Cable sheath insulation tests.

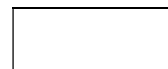
Earth fault indication relay test.

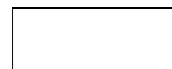

Contractor


Witness 1


Witness 2


Employer


Witness 1


Witness 2

PSES14.2 Low Voltage Installation

Continuity test to prove the correct connection and correct phase rotation of all low voltage cables from the miniature substations to the distribution kiosks and to the cable house connection ends.

Continuity test to prove the earthing of all cable armouring and earthing conductors.

1000 Volt insulation test on all connected cables, meter to be disconnected before test is done.

Certificate of Compliances C.O.C shall be issued for each minisub and relevant LV- installation.

PSES14.3 Manuals

The Contractor shall submit three complete sets of manuals to the Engineer for the above installation. These manuals shall contain all “as built” drawings, maintenance information on all the equipment supplied and a suggested plan of maintenance.

One sample copy must be submitted to the Engineer for his approval prior to the printing of the three manuals.

Final payment certificate will not be released if these manuals have not been submitted to the Engineer and if they do not conform to the Engineer’s requirements.

The completion certificate will not be issued nor will the guarantee be released before the above condition has been met.

END OF SECTION

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C3.4.3 Particular Specifications

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2



GENERAL PRELIMINARIES

The Joint Building Contracts Committee® - NPC

General Preliminaries

Edition 6.2 – May 2018

JBCC®

EXPLANATORY NOTES AND INSTRUCTIONS

Introduction

The Joint Building Contracts Committee (JBCC®) has compiled the JBCC® General Preliminaries in the interest of standardisation of documentation and good practice in the building industry. The document generally covers all aspects of preliminaries for most types of projects and should consequently simplify the procurement for and the administration of building projects and produce economic advantages to all concerned. Users should note that the JBCC® General Preliminaries has been specifically formulated for use with the May 2018 edition of the JBCC® agreements (PBA and NSSA Edition 6.2, MWA Edition 5.2)

How the document is structured

The JBCC® General Preliminaries is part of the building agreement and subcontract documentation to be referred to in the priced document. It is intended that the JBCC® General Preliminaries (May 2018) be used by reference only in the preparation of the priced document. The project specific preliminaries comprises the following:

- Section A** A recital of the headings of the individual clauses in the JBCC® Principal Building Agreement (PBA), JBCC® N/S Subcontract Agreement (NSSA) or JBCC® Minor Works Agreement (MWA). Modifications to the standard clauses should be avoided. Amendments, modifications, corrections or supplements to the aforementioned agreements may be recorded in the space provided in the relevant JBCC® Contract Data or against the relevant clause numbers in this section
- Section B** A recital of the headings of the individual clauses in the JBCC® General Preliminaries. Changes to the standard clauses should be avoided. Any modifications should be recorded against the relevant clause numbers in this section
- Section C** Any special clauses to meet the particular circumstances of a specific project are embodied in this section

The JBCC® agreements are for use with or without bills of quantities. This brings a consistency in the contractual language used and the administrative procedures required in building agreements

Preface to the project specific preliminaries

- 1 The project specific preliminaries of the priced document should contain the following introduction: "The JBCC® General Preliminaries (May 2018) published by the Joint Building Contracts Committee for use with the JBCC® Principal Building Agreement Edition 6.2 / JBCC® N/S Subcontract Agreement Edition 6.2 / JBCC® Minor Works Agreement Edition 5.2 shall be deemed to be incorporated in these bills of quantities / this lump sum document, amended as hereinafter described

The contractor is deemed to have referred to such document for the full intent and meaning of each clause

The clauses in the document are hereinafter referred to by clause number and heading only

Where standard clauses or alternatives are not entirely applicable to the agreement such amendments, modifications, corrections or supplements as will apply are given under each relevant clause heading and such amendments, modifications, corrections or supplements shall take precedence notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in the JBCC® General Preliminaries (May 2018)"

- 2 Clauses marked with an asterisk (★) are optional clauses or clauses requiring information relating to the specific project, selection and details of which are to be included in the JBCC® Contract Data

- 3 Where clauses are not used for the specific project these should nevertheless be listed in the preliminaries of the bills of quantities / project specific preliminaries of the lump sum document but marked “Not applicable” or “N/A”

Disclaimer

While the Joint Building Contracts Committee aims to ensure that its publications represent best practice, the Joint Building Contracts Committee does not accept or assume any liability or responsibility for any events or consequences which derive from the use of the General Preliminaries

Copyright reserved

The name ‘The Joint Building Contracts Committee® NPC’, the abbreviation JBCC®, the electronic version e-JBCC® and the JBCC® logo are registered trademarks. The JBCC® claims authorship of this work. All rights are reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, scanning, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission in writing of the JBCC®. Unauthorised reproduction of the work is an infringement of the copyright. Judicial proceedings can and will be instituted to obtain relief and recovery of damages

GENERAL PRELIMINARIES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Section		Description	Page
DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION	1.1	Definitions	2
	1.2	Interpretation	2
DOCUMENTS	2.1	Checking of documents	2
	2.2	Provisional bills of quantities	2
	2.3	Availability of construction information	2
	2.4	Ordering of materials and goods	2
PREVIOUS WORK AND ADJOINING PROPERTIES	3.1	Previous work - dimensional accuracy	3
	3.2	Previous work - defects	3
	3.3	Inspection of adjoining properties	3
THE SITE	4.1	Handover of site in stages	3
	4.2	Enclosure of the works	3
	4.3	Geotechnical and other investigations	3
	4.4	Encroachments	3
	4.5	Existing premises occupied	3
	4.6	Services – known	4
MANAGEMENT OF CONTRACT	5.1	Management of the works	4
	5.2	Progress meetings	4
	5.3	Technical meetings	4
SAMPLES, SHOP DRAWINGS, ETC	6.1	Samples of materials	4
	6.2	Workmanship samples	4
	6.3	Shop drawings	4
	6.4	Compliance with manufacturer's instructions	5
DEPOSITS AND FEES	7.1	Deposits and fees	5
TEMPORARY SERVICES	8.1	Water	5
	8.2	Electricity	5
	8.3	Ablution and welfare facilities	6
	8.4	Communication facilities	6
PRIME COST AMOUNTS	9.1	Responsibility for prime cost amounts	6
ATTENDANCE ON SUBCONTRACTORS	10.1	General attendance	6
	10.2	Special attendance	6
GENERAL	11.1	Protection of the works	7
	11.2	Protection/isolation of existing works and works occupied in sections	7
	11.3	Security of the works	7
	11.4	Notice before covering work	7
	11.5	Disturbance	7
	11.6	Environmental disturbance	7
	11.7	Works cleaning and clearing	7
	11.8	Vermin	7
	11.9	Overhand work	7
	11.10	Tenant installations by direct contractors	7
	11.11	Advertising	7

1.0 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION

1.1 Definitions

A word or phrase in bold type in the **JBCC**[®] General Preliminaries shall have the meaning assigned to it in the definitions listed in the **JBCC**[®] Principal Building Agreement, the **JBCC**[®] N/S Subcontract Agreement or the **JBCC**[®] Minor Works Agreement as the case may be. A word or phrase not in bold type shall be interpreted in the context of its usage

The **JBCC**[®] General Preliminaries applies with the necessary changes made to the **JBCC**[®] N/S Subcontract Agreement

1.2 Interpretation

- 1.2.1 In the **JBCC**[®] General Preliminaries, unless inconsistent with the context, the words “accept, allow, appoint, approve, authorise, certify, decide, demand, designate, grant, instruct, issue, list, **notice**, notify, object, record, reduce, refuse, request, state” and their derivatives, require such acts to be in writing
- 1.2.2 The masculine gender includes the feminine and neuter genders and vice versa, the singular includes the plural and vice versa and a person includes juristic or artificial persons
- 1.2.3 The headings of clauses are for information only and shall not be used in interpretation
- 1.2.4 Documents and legislation referred to in the **JBCC**[®] General Preliminaries shall mean the current edition thereof with all amendments thereto at the date of submission of the tender unless otherwise stated
- 1.2.5 Clauses marked with an asterisk (★) are optional clauses or clauses requiring information relating to the specific project, selection and details of which are to be included in the **JBCC**[®] Contract Data

2.0 DOCUMENTS

2.1 Checking of documents

The tenderer shall check the numbers of the pages of the tender documents and should any be missing or duplicated, or the reproduction is indistinct, or if any doubt exists as to the intent or meaning of any description, or where the **agreement** contains any obvious errors, the tenderer shall give **notice** to the **principal agent** forthwith thereof and the **principal agent** shall promptly give a written directive

2.2 ★ Provisional bills of quantities

The quantities in provisional bills of quantities are an indication of the works to be executed and are subject to remeasurement

2.3 ★ Availability of construction information

Where the **construction information** for the **works** is incomplete and will only be completed during the **construction period** the **contractor** and **principal agent** shall work together to identify the requirements for the provision of **construction information**. The **contractor** and **principal agent** shall agree the dates that are reasonable by when the **contractor** is to be provided with each outstanding item of the **construction information** in terms of the **programme**

The **contractor** and **subcontractor** shall agree dates by when the **subcontractor** is to be provided with each item of the outstanding information in terms of the **programme**

2.4 Ordering of materials and goods

Should the **contractor** use the quantities in the **priced document** for the ordering of **materials and goods**, the **contractor** does so at his own risk

3.0 PREVIOUS WORK AND ADJOINING PROPERTIES

3.1 ★ Previous work - dimensional accuracy

In successive contracts the **contractor** shall within ten per cent (10%) of the initial **construction period** or twenty (20) **working days** after taking possession of the **site**, whichever is the lesser, check the existing levels, lines, profiles and the like affecting the **works** and satisfy himself as to the dimensional accuracy of work previously executed. The **contractor** shall forthwith give **notice** to the **principal agent** and request a **contract instruction** regarding any dimensional inaccuracy found in work previously executed

3.2 ★ Previous work - defects

In successive contracts the **contractor**, on becoming aware of a **defect** in work previously executed which affects the **works**, shall forthwith give notice to the **principal agent** and request a **contract instruction** regarding such a **defect**

3.3 ★ Inspection of adjoining properties

Before commencing the **works** the **principal agent** and the **contractor** shall arrange with the owners of adjacent buildings and properties and representatives of local authorities to inspect, inter alia, the buildings, structures, pavings, kerbs, channels and fences. The **contractor** shall record all conditions that the **works** could affect and copy the **principal agent** accordingly. The **contractor** shall pay particular attention to cracks, **defects** and existing levels related to structures, pavings, kerbs, channels and fences which later could be claimed to have been caused or disturbed by the **works**

Where instructed by the **principal agent**, levels and photographs shall be taken by the **contractor** and the cost thereof shall be for the **employer's** account. Certified copies shall be lodged with the **principal agent**

4.0 THE SITE

4.1 ★ Handover of site in stages

Handover of the **site** to the **contractor** is to be done in stages

4.2 ★ Enclosure of the works

The **contractor** shall erect, maintain and remove at completion hoardings with gantries, fans, safety screens, elements thereof, all for the protection of the public and others. Specific hoarding requirements are described in the **contract data**

4.3 ★ Geotechnical and other investigations

Information relating to geotechnical and/or other investigations are recorded in the **contract data** or issued with the **agreement**

4.4 Encroachments

The **contractor** shall give **notice** to the **principal agent** within ten per cent (10%) of the initial **construction period** or twenty (20) **working days** after taking possession of the **site**, whichever is the lesser, if any encroachments of adjoining buildings, structures, pavements, boundaries, services, etc exist in order that the necessary arrangements may be made for the rectification of any encroachments

4.5 ★ Existing premises occupied

Existing premises will be in use and occupied during the execution of the **works**. The **contractor** shall execute the works in a manner to cause the least interfere with the general routine of the occupants of the premises and minimise any nuisance from dust, noise or other causes with due regard for the safety of the occupants

4.6 ★ **Services - known**

All known existing services are described in the **contract data** indicating whether such services are to be terminated, diverted or continued in use either temporarily or permanently

5.0 **MANAGEMENT OF CONTRACT**

5.1 **Management of the works**

The **contractor** is responsible for the management of the sequence for carrying out of the **works** to avoid, inter alia, subsequent cutting or patching of finished work

5.2 **Progress meetings**

The **principal agent** and **contractor** shall hold meetings related to the progress of the **works** at regular intervals and at such other times as may be necessary. **Subcontractors** shall not be present at progress meetings unless specifically requested by the **contractor** or **principal agent**. The **principal agent** shall record and distribute the minutes of the meetings

5.3 **Technical meetings**

At the instance of the **principal agent** or the **contractor**, meetings shall be held to deal with technical and **subcontractors'** coordination matters

6.0 **SAMPLES, SHOP DRAWINGS AND MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS**

6.1 **Samples of materials**

The **contractor** shall furnish at his cost samples of materials and specimens of finishes as may be called for by the **principal agent** for his approval

6.2 **Workmanship samples**

The **principal agent** may instruct the **contractor** to furnish samples of workmanship for his approval. Where the **principal agent** requires an assembly of various elements of the building or installation which is not incorporated in the **works**, the **contractor** shall arrange such an assembly at the **employer's** expense. The **contract value** shall be adjusted accordingly

6.3 **Shop drawings**

Shop drawings are drawings, diagrams, designs, illustrations, schedules, performance charts, brochures, setting out drawings, shop details and other data which are prepared by the **contractor**, **subcontractor**, manufacturer, supplier or distributor which illustrate manufacturing details and methods of execution of work

Only shop drawings and/or samples submitted for review shall be considered by the **principal agent**. The **principal agent's** approval of shop drawings and/or samples shall be limited to checking for general conformity with design and specification and shall not alter the design responsibilities in terms of the **agreement**. The **principal agent** may refer shop drawings and/or samples to the relevant **agent** for revision and/or approval

Where shop drawings are called for:

6.3.1 The **contractor** shall:

- Prepare or ensure that a **subcontractor**, manufacturer, supplier or distributor prepares shop drawings at his/their own expense
- Submit two (2) copies of shop drawings to the **principal agent** for approval
- Allow the **principal agent** reasonable time to approve shop drawings
- Keep a record of all shop drawings submitted to the **principal agent**
- Ensure that shop drawings conform to the dimensions of built work

- Submit two (2) copies of the approved shop drawings to the **principal agent** for his use and for use in the **works**
- Ensure that work is not executed from shop drawings that have not been approved by the **principal agent** and/or **agents**
- Not be entitled to payment for elements of the **works** (for example steel roof truss components such as members, gussets, connection plates and the like) for which shop drawings may have been approved by the **principal agent** and/or the relevant **agent** but which are in excess of the design parameters stipulated by the relevant agent. Payment shall be based on the design parameters stipulated by the relevant **agent**

6.3.2 **The principal agent shall:**

- Check timeously the shop drawings submitted by the **contractor**
- Give **notice** to the **contractor** timeously where shop drawings are approved or are to be revised and resubmitted

6.4 **Compliance with manufacturer's instructions**

The **contractor** shall take delivery of, handle, store, use, apply and fix all products in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions

7.0 **DEPOSITS AND FEES**

7.1 **Deposits and fees**

The **contractor** shall arrange for and pay all deposits, fees and charges according to law, regulation or bylaw of any local or other authorities that relate to hoardings, the use of pavements, street encroachment or crossings, permission for the suspension of parking facilities and the like

8.0 **TEMPORARY SERVICES**

8.1 **★ Water**

The **employer** does not warrant that any water supply that may exist is adequate for the proper execution of the **works**. Where such supply is inadequate, the **contractor** shall provide an adequate supply at his own expense. Water for the **works**, as stated in the **contract data** shall be provided by:

8.1.1 **Option A**

The **contractor** including necessary temporary plumbing

8.1.2 **Option B**

The **employer** free of charge to the **contractor**. The **contractor** shall connect to the existing water supply at approved points and execute any necessary temporary plumbing

8.1.3 **Option C**

The **employer** to the **contractor**. The **contractor** shall connect to the existing water supply at approved points, supply and install meters and execute any necessary temporary work. The **employer** shall meter the consumption and invoice the **contractor** for payment thereof

8.2 **★ Electricity**

The **employer** does not warrant that any electricity supply that may exist is adequate for the proper execution of the **works**. Where such supply is inadequate, the **contractor** shall provide an adequate supply at his own expense. Electricity for the **works**, as stated in the **contract data** shall be provided by:

8.2.1 **Option A**

The **contractor** including necessary temporary installation work

8.2.2 **Option B**

The **employer** free of charge to the **contractor**. The **contractor** shall connect to the existing electricity supply at approved points and execute the necessary temporary installation

8.2.3 **Option C**

The **employer** to the **contractor**. The **contractor** shall connect to the existing electricity supply at approved points, supply and install meters and execute necessary temporary work. The **employer** shall meter the consumption and invoice the **contractor** for payment thereof

8.3 **★ Ablution and welfare facilities**

Ablution and welfare facilities, as stated in the **contract data** shall be provided for the use of all persons on the **site** by:

8.3.1 **Option A**

The **contractor** who shall maintain such facilities in a thoroughly clean and tidy condition

8.3.2 **Option B**

The **employer** who shall permit the use of existing facilities. The **contractor** shall maintain such facilities in a thoroughly clean and tidy condition and make good any damage thereto at his own expense

8.4 **★ Communication facilities**

Communication facilities, as stated in the **contract data**, shall be provided by the **contractor** who shall be entitled to recover usage costs from the users thereof

9.0 **PRIME COST AMOUNTS**

9.1 **Responsibility for prime cost amounts**

All **prime cost amounts** are for **materials and goods** delivered to the **site**. The **priced document** shall make provision for the **contractor** to separately price for overheads and profit and for taking delivery, unloading, checking against invoices and/or delivery notes, unpacking, storing, hoisting and fixing of such **materials and goods**. The **contractor** shall check the quantity and condition of all **materials and goods** on taking delivery as any **materials and goods** subsequently found missing or damaged shall be replaced at the **contractor's** expense

10.0 **ATTENDANCE ON SUBCONTRACTORS**

10.1 **General attendance**

General attendance duties of the **contractor** are listed in clause 12.2 of the **JBCC®** N/S Subcontract Agreement

10.2 **Special attendance**

The **priced document** shall make provision for the **contractor** to separately price for special attendance on each **subcontractor**. Special attendance such as unloading, storing, placing in position, providing special power supplies, specific hoisting, use of cranes and scaffolding requirements, provision of temporary casing and/or other specific protection of the **works**, special security and clearing away rubbish are described in detail in the **priced document**

11.0 GENERAL

11.1 ★ Protection of the works

Where specific protection of the **works** is required this shall be described in the **contract data**

11.2 ★ Protection/isolation of existing works and works occupied in sections

The **contractor** shall provide all reasonable temporary measures to protect/isolate the existing and/or **sections** of the occupied **works** and remove such measures on **practical completion**

11.3 Security of the works

The **contractor** shall take all appropriate measures for general security of the **works**

11.4 Notice before covering work

The **contractor** shall give adequate **notice** to the **principal agent** whenever any work or material such as foundations, plumbing, drainage and the like which is subject to inspection or remeasurement is to be covered or concealed in any way. In default of such a **notice** being received timeously by the **principal agent** such work shall be exposed and later made good at the **contractor's** expense

11.5 ★ Disturbance

The **contractor** shall execute the **works** with a minimum of disturbance to adjoining premises, any parts of the **works** already handed over and the occupants of those premises and/or parts

11.6 ★ Environmental disturbance

The **contractor** shall execute the **works** without any unreasonable adverse effect on the environment

11.7 Works cleaning and clearing

The contractor shall regularly clean and clear away all rubbish and excess materials as the works proceed and leave the works in a clean and satisfactory state for use and occupation in terms of the **agreement**

11.8 Vermin

The **contractor** shall take all necessary precautions to keep the **works** and the **site** free from vermin and shall leave the **works** vermin-free on completion

11.9 Overhand work

No provision has been made for overhand work. Where necessary, the **contractor** shall make his own arrangements with the owners of adjoining properties to execute such work

11.10 Tenant installations

On **practical completion** of a **section** of the **works** and where the **principal agent** instructs that tenant installation work is to be executed by others, then:

11.10.1 The **contractor** shall allow reasonable access

11.10.2 The **contractor** shall not receive any mark-up for overheads and profit on any omissions in this regard. Claims for loss of profit shall not be entertained

11.10.3 The **principal agent** shall carry out an inspection of such areas where tenant installation work is to be executed and record the state of completion and issue a list of **defects** pertaining to such areas

11.11 Advertising

All advertising rights on the **site** and the hoardings are reserved exclusively for the **employer**

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

STRUCTURAL STANDARD SPECIFICATION

CONTENTS

TECHNICAL NOTES AND SPECIFICATIONS FOR STRUCTURAL WORK.....	2
G1. General	2
C1. General Concrete	4
C1.1 Applicable Codes and Standards.....	4
C1.2 Material Specifications.....	4
C1.2.1 Concrete Quality	4
C1.2.2 Concrete class.....	5
C1.3 Execution of Works	5
C1.4 Reinforcement	8
C2. Industrial Floors	9
C2.1 Applicable Codes and Standards.....	9
C2.2 Material Specifications	9
C2.3 Execution of Works.....	9
C3. Foundations	11
C3.1 Applicable Codes and Standards.....	11
C3.2 Material Specifications	11
C3.3 Execution of Works.....	11
C3.4 Subsoil Drainage	13
C3.5 Piling.....	14
C4. Summary of information to be submitted to the Engineer	15
C5. Abbreviations	15
P.1 Post-Tensioning	16
P1.1 Applicable Codes and Standards.....	16
P1.2 Material Specifications	16
P1.3 Execution of Works.....	18
B1.1 Applicable Codes and Standards	19
B1.2 Material Specifications.....	20

B1.3	Execution of Works	21
S1.1	Applicable Codes and Standards	26
S1.2	Material Specifications.....	27
S1.2.1	Hot rolled steel:.....	27
S1.2.2	Cold-formed steel:	27
S1.2.3	Bolts, nuts, and washers:	27
S1.2.4	Welds:	27
S1.2.5	Fire protection:	27
S1.2.6	Corrosion protection:.....	27
S1.3	Workshop Drawings.....	27
S1.4	Fabrication and Erection	28
S1.5	Corrosion Protection.....	30
S1.6	Cladding	33
S1.7	Fixing of Services to Roof Structure	33
S1.8	Gutters, Downpipes and Launder Pipes	34

TECHNICAL NOTES AND SPECIFICATIONS FOR STRUCTURAL WORK

G1. General

1. The Contractor shall ensure that all subcontractors, relevant site personnel and supervisors are in possession of these notes and have familiarised themselves with the content.
2. These notes shall be read in conjunction with all relevant drawings of the structural and civil engineers, and in conjunction with all architectural, mechanical, and electrical details, the bill of quantities and all applicable codes and standards mentioned below. In the event of any discrepancies between these notes and the codes and standards, these notes shall take precedence and shall govern.
3. All National/International Standard references mentioned in this document, shall be deemed to refer to the latest edition of that Standard.
4. Where there is conflicting information between the drawings and the Bill of Quantities, the drawing specifications will take preference over the specifications in the Bill of Quantities. These discrepancies should be brought to the engineers' attention prior to the commencement of the works.
5. It remains the main contractor's responsibility to compare drawings, details and information issued by all disciplines and notify relevant parties of any discrepancies, within a reasonable time, in writing.
6. All work shall be done in accordance with the latest SANS, SABS and OHS specifications relevant to the scope of work.
7. The contractor shall check all dimensions (site and drawing related) prior to the commencement of the works. Any discrepancies shall immediately be reported to the engineer in writing.
8. No scaling off drawings is allowed.
9. The onus rests with the Contractor to produce work which conforms in quality and accuracy of detail to all the requirements of the specifications and drawings. The Contractor shall, at his own expense, institute a quality control system and provide experienced Engineers, Technicians, Foremen, Surveyors and other technical staff, together with all transport, instruments and equipment, to ensure adequate supervision and positive control of the works at all times. (Also refer Item 16 below.)
10. Refer to Engineers' drawings and specifications for all superimposed design loads for suspended slabs. These design loads may not be exceeded at any stage during construction unless adequate additional support for the slab is provided. The responsibility for the latter rests with the Contractor, who must obtain the Engineer's written consent for the proposed support methodology.

11. A copy of all the relevant SANS codes, as mentioned in the Project Notes and Specifications, drawings, and construction activities, should be provided by the contractor and kept on site at all times for reference by his own team and by the Engineer. This in addition to the Project Notes and Specifications permanently displayed in the site office.
12. Verbal instructions shall under no circumstances be considered as contractually binding. All verbal instructions from the Engineer shall be written in the site instruction book by the contractor to be countersigned by the Engineer.
13. The Contractor may submit proposals for alternative products to those specified by the Engineer in the project specifications and/or on the drawings. The Engineer may approve in writing, at his discretion, any alternatives that he may deem to be "equal or better". The specifications of any alternative products shall be provided to the engineer well in advance to allow the Engineer to confirm the adequacy of the alternative product. Alternatively, the Engineer may allow a product that is NOT equal or better, with certain adjustments in the project designs and specifications. Such changes will be charged by the Engineer to the Contractor's account.
14. Unless otherwise specified on the structural drawings, waterproofing shall be done in accordance with the architectural/specialist specifications. The Contractor shall ensure that waterproofing materials are not damaged during backfilling operations and fixing of steel or any other fixtures. Any repair work shall be for the Contractor's account.
15. The Contractor shall be responsible for the control of storm water and any dewatering that may be required on the site, to prevent damage to structures (existing or new), banks, excavations, or any other works for the duration of the contract period.
16. The Contractor shall be responsible for the design and maintenance of temporary structures. Relevant documentation and design certificates for all formwork and scaffolding must be kept on site at all times and made available on request. All formwork and temporary support systems must be inspected and signed off by the Contractor's relevant specialist prior to the construction or demolition of the element.
17. The Contractor shall have a quality control plan in place, which among other things shall include the use of adequate quality control sheets to ensure that all work is carried out in accordance with the drawings and specifications. The quality control sheets shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval prior to the commencement of construction activities. All structural elements shall be covered by these documents.
18. Engineer's inspections shall be requested by the Contractor at least 48 hours in advance. Casting of concrete shall not proceed until the Engineer confirmed acceptance of the prepared work. The Engineer may reject at his discretion any portion of work where the opportunity of physical inspection was not afforded by the Contractor.
19. The signing of quality control sheets as part of the Engineer's acceptance of the prepared works, in no way relieves the Contractor of his responsibility for the quality and dimensional accuracy of the constructed works. The

Engineer's signature only confirms that the inspected works have been prepared generally in accordance with the drawings and specifications.

C1. General Concrete

C1.1 Applicable Codes and Standards

Execution of works	Code
Earthworks (general)	<i>SANS 2001-BE1</i>
Concrete Works (structural) and tolerances	<i>SANS 2001-CC1</i>
Strip Footings, Pad Footings and slab-on-the-ground foundations for masonry walling	<i>SANS 2001-CM2</i>
Bending dimensions and scheduling of steel reinforcement for concrete	<i>SANS 282</i>
National Building Regulations	<i>SANS 10400</i>
Materials and Execution of Work	<i>SANS 10100-2</i>
Concrete Floor Finishes	<i>SANS 10109-2</i>
Tolerances	<i>SANS 2001-CC1 Tables 11 and 12</i>

Materials	Code
Cement	<i>SANS 50197-1</i>
Cement Extenders	<i>SANS 1491-1, 2, 3</i> <i>(GGBS, Fly Ash, Silica Fume)</i>
Aggregate	<i>SANS 1083</i>
Ready-mixed concrete	<i>SANS 878</i>
Compressive strength of concrete	<i>SANS 5863</i>
Steel bars for concrete reinforcement	<i>SANS 920</i>
Welded steel fabric for concrete reinforcement	<i>SANS 1024</i>
Sealing Compounds: Polysulphide	<i>SANS 110</i>
Sealing Compounds: Polyurethane	<i>SANS 1077</i>
Sealing Compounds: Silicone Rubber-base	<i>SANS 1305-1</i>

C1.2 Material Specifications

C1.2.1 Concrete Quality

- a) All concrete mixes for structural work shall be designed by a competent concrete technologist in an approved laboratory. Proof of these mixes will be submitted to the Engineer for his records and verification that it complies with all requirements and specifications.
- b) Aggregates with a high modulus of elasticity and low shrinkage potential shall be used. The type and origin of aggregate shall be submitted to the Engineer prior to construction.

C1.2.2 Concrete class

Type / Location	28-day F_{cu} MPa	Stone mm
Blinding and Mass Concrete	15	19/20
All Concrete, unless otherwise specified on drawings	25	19/20
Composite retaining walls	20	13/14

C1.3 Execution of Works

- C1.3.1 No pumping of concrete shall be allowed without prior approval from the Engineer and confirmation by the supplier that the concrete mix has been suitably designed as a pumping mix.
- C1.3.2 All concrete shall be continuously cured for 7 days by a method approved by the Engineer.
- C1.3.3 The position and method of forming of all construction joints shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval prior to construction.
- C1.3.4 Concrete cover:

Type / Location	Concrete cover	
Raft Beams	50	mm to stirrups
Raft slab	Varies, refer to drawing	mm
Suspended slabs, stair cases	30	mm

(Unless shown otherwise on reinforcement schedules and layouts)

- C1.3.5 The necessary stools, clips, and other means of supporting reinforcement are provided in order to achieve the specified cover. However, it remains the Contractor's responsibility to ensure that the specified cover is achieved.
- C1.3.6 Tolerances (SANS 2001-CC1 Table 11)

Type / Location	Degree of accuracy
Pad and strip foundations	III
Raft foundations	II
Reinforcement	II
Elements above foundation level	II

Precast elements	I
Cover to reinforcement	II
HD Bolts	II
Industrial surface beds	as per TR34 (see Section C2)

- C1.3.7 All suspended concrete slabs to be adequately surveyed at intervals as agreed, before and after removal of support work. Results to be forwarded to the Engineer for his records. Costs of all survey work are deemed to be included in the concrete rates.
- C1.3.8 Extent of back propping and sequence to be discussed with the Engineer before commencement of works. Beams, Cantilevers and Slabs supported by hanging structures are to be fully supported until the concrete's design strength is obtained.
- C1.3.9 All exposed concrete to be constructed as indicated in section C1.3.6, unless indicated otherwise by the Architect.
- C1.3.10 All precast elements to be constructed as indicated in section C1.3.6, unless indicated otherwise by the Architect.
- C1.3.11 Refer to Architectural and Engineering drawings and specifications for concrete surface.
- C1.3.12 Concrete slumps shall be in accordance with the approved mix design, but generally in the range of 70mm to 100mm. Acceptance of deviation from this range shall be at the discretion of the Engineer.
- C1.3.13 Concrete slump tests shall be performed in accordance with SANS 5862-1 on every batch of concrete arriving on site and recorded on a suitable quality control sheet. The sheet shall reflect the structural item for which the concrete is earmarked, as well as the time of the test and the recorded slump. This set of information shall be separate from the cube test control sheets and shall be submitted to the Engineer within 24 hours after completion of concrete casting.
- C1.3.14 Recorded slumps shall be within 25% of the design value. Where this is not achieved, the Contractor may choose to return the concrete or, at his own risk, place the concrete but then also prepare an additional set of cubes for testing to verify the strength compliance of that batch of concrete.
- C1.3.15 No water or additives may be added to the concrete without the written approval from the concrete supplier and/or the Engineer.
- C1.3.16 Concrete cubes shall be prepared in accordance with SANS 5861-3 and tested in accordance with SANS 5863. One set of concrete test cubes shall be prepared per 50 m³ of concrete cast, or any part thereof. These shall be made daily for every cast.

One set comprises of:

Conventional concrete:

- 3 cubes to be tested at 7 days
- 3 cubes to be tested at 28 days

Post-tensioned concrete:

- 2 cubes to be tested at 3 days *
- 1 cube to be tested at 7 days
- 3 cubes to be tested at 28 days

* Test must verify that the specified concrete strength at stress transfer has been achieved. Cubes shall be left on the cast slab to simulate actual curing conditions on site. Sides of the cubes to be protected from drying out.

C1.3.17 Cube test results shall clearly reflect the structural item for which the concrete was used. An appropriate cube numbering system shall be used, and this shall be cross-referenced to the relevant engineering drawing.

C1.3.18 Where camber is indicated on layout drawings, beams and slabs shall be constructed with the following upward camber:

- Cantilever : span/200, unless noted otherwise
- Other : span/400, unless noted otherwise

C1.3.19 Removal of formwork in normal to hot conditions: Refer to Table 2 in SANS 2001-CC1

- Note that where formwork is removed before the curing period has lapsed, curing compound shall be applied to all surfaces previously covered by the formwork.

C1.3.20 Post-tensioned slab props may be removed after the approval of the stressing results.

C1.3.21 No kickers to be cast for columns and walls.

C1.3.22 For retaining walls laterally supported by concrete slabs, backfilling to be done not sooner than 7 days after casting of slabs

C3.23 Refer to Architects', Electrical- and Mechanical Engineers' drawings to verify positions of downpipes, duct penetrations, recesses, other services as required by them, prior to casting of concrete. (Also refer to Section C1.3.22 and C1.3.24 below.)

C1.3.24 Penetrations smaller than 150mm in diameter are not indicated on the structural drawings. Any penetrations not shown on the drawings, in any part of the structure must be brought to the attention of the Engineer prior to casting of concrete.

C1.3.25 Concentration of a large number of sleeves or services to be cast into a concrete element shall not be allowed. Grouping shall be in small bundles of three, should the diameter allow this, and spaced at minimum 100mm c/c, all as discussed and agreed with the Engineer before concreting.

C1.3.26 No chasing of services in the concrete structure is allowed.

C1.3.27 No cores will be allowed without prior approval from the Structural Engineer.

C1.3.28 Any item (electrical- and water-sleeves, conduits, pipes, *et cetera*) cast into the concrete structure must be durable and able to withstand the hydration energy of the concrete as well as construction loads and actions during casting that could possibly cause damage.

C1.3.29 All columns placed centrally about gridlines or centrelines, unless shown otherwise.

- C1.3.30 All exposed corners of concrete elements to have 20x20 chamfer or as per Architects' specifications.
- C1.3.31 All structural movement joints (joints between slabs at soffit, split columns, and walls etc.) to have a 20x20 chamfer, unless indicated otherwise.
- C1.3.32 Fixing of tiles on to suspended slabs or surface beds:
- All tiling to be laid in accordance with SABS 0107:1996
 - All tiles to be laid in accordance with the adhesive supplier's specifications, recommendations, and stipulations.
 - All tiles to have soft joints/movement joints provided at regular intervals according to the Architect's drawings and/or the specialists' specifications and recommendations.

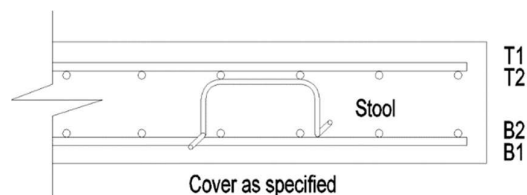
C1.4 Reinforcement

- C1.4.1 Reinforcement designation:
- R denotes plain round mild steel bars of strength 250 MPa.
 - Y denotes high yield deformed steel bars of strength 450 MPa.
 - Z denotes types of steel not covered by R and Y. This may include cold drawn wire, high yield bars cold-reduced to increase yield stress, mild steel bars (plain or deformed) cold-worked to increase yield stress, etc.
- C1.4.2 Cold-reduced steel bars shall have a proof stress of 500 MPa minimum and tensile strength of 550 MPa.
- C1.4.3 All reinforcement must be inspected by the Engineer before concrete is cast. The Engineer shall be given a minimum of 48 hours advance notice of such an inspection. (Also refer to Item 18 under General in this specification.)
- C1.4.4 Inspection will **only** be carried out if:
- All steel is properly fixed as per the layout drawings,
 - Spacer blocks are positioned,
 - Shuttering is cleaned out,
 - Reinforcement has been checked by the responsible contractor, and
 - The inspection sheet has been completed by the contractor.
- C1.4.5 Reinforcing bars shall be stacked off the ground so as to prevent distortion and shall be protected from aggressive environments and contamination.
- C1.4.6 Reinforcing bars shall be clear of all foreign material and loose rust when fixed in position. Rust shall be removed by wire brush to ensure a sound surface to which the concrete may bond.
- C1.4.7 Welding of high-yield (Y) reinforcement is not allowed. Mild steel (R) reinforcement may be welded only if instructed or expressly agreed to in writing by the Engineer.
- C1.4.8 Heating of reinforcement for the purposes of manipulation or bending on site is expressly forbidden.
- C1.4.9 Example of notation on drawings:

- 20Y25-01-150 T1
- 20 : Number of bars
- Y : High Yield Steel
- 25 : Bar Diameter
- 01 : Bar mark
- 150 : Bar spacing c/c, mm
- T1 : Location
- Refer to Section C.5 for other abbreviations that may be used as part of the notation.

C1.4.10 Typical reinforcing layers in horizontal elements:

- Stools stand on B1, supporting T2



- C1.4.11 All epoxies and specifications for dowel reinforcement to conform with drawing specifications. If no specifications are noted on the drawings, contractor to obtain approval from the Engineer on the epoxy and specifications to be used with dowel reinforcement. All products to be installed according to the manufacturer's specifications.

C2. Industrial Floors

These notes are supplementary and should be read in conjunction with Section C1

C2.1 Applicable Codes and Standards

Description	Code
Execution of works	<i>Technical Report No. 34 (latest edition) (TR34)</i>
Materials	<i>SANS 10109-1</i>

C2.2 Material Specifications

Refer to *Section C2.1*

C2.3 Execution of Works

C2.3.1 Floor construction

- a) The preparation, construction and finishing of industrial concrete surface beds shall be undertaken by a specialist flooring contractor only. The Contractor shall forward all relevant project data to the Engineer.

- b) Where no damp-proof membrane is specified, the supporting layer works must be dampened before placing of concrete.
- c) The flooring contractor shall confirm all levels and tolerances of the surface bed layer works before commencement of works. Allowable finished surface tolerances for sub-base to be +0mm and -25mm. Positive tolerances above zero are not permitted. Any areas not conforming to these tolerances shall be reported to the Engineer by the flooring contractor prior to casting of floor. (Note: Layer works to Civil Engineers' specifications)

C2.3.2 Floor type

Free Movement (FM)

C2.3.3 Surface regularity

Description	Requirement
Permissible limits -- as per <i>Table 4.2, TR34</i>	FM3

Floor contractor to provide the Engineer with a detailed laser-scan type survey and report by an independent surveyor, within two weeks of casting the floor. The cost of all survey work shall be deemed to be included in the concrete rates for the floor unless a separate item in the BoQ allows for surveys.

C2.3.4 Surface requirements

Description	Requirement
Abrasive resistance -- as per <i>Table 5.1, TR34</i>	AR2
Abrasive tests	To be carried out at 28-day concrete strength
Surface finish	Smooth power float or as per architectural requirements
Surface hardener	None, unless otherwise specified

C2.3.5 Joints

- a) Movement- and construction-joints to be constructed as per layout and details provided, and as discussed and agreed upon with the flooring contractor ahead of any concrete being cast.
- b) Sawn joints in surface beds shall be cut as soon as the concrete has reached sufficient strength (Generally between 4 and 24 hours after the concrete pour, but to be verified by the Contractor based on the accepted concrete mix design and test samples.)
- c) Joint sealants as specified, installed in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications.
- d) Provide 10mm thick Jointex with polysulphide sealer around all columns.
- e) Allow for a suitable bond breaker between surface beds and adjacent brick or concrete elements, unless otherwise specified.
- f) Joints must be repeated in the finish.
- g) No mesh/rebar is allowed to span over a saw cut. Where drawings reflect contradicting details, the Engineer shall be notified in writing immediately with a request to clarify.
- h) Unreinforced concrete surface bed joints shall generally comply with the following:

- i) Joint spacing less than or equal to 30 times the floor thickness, but max 4.5 m c/c
- j) Floor panel aspect ratio less than or equal to 1.25
- k) No joints meet at an angle of less than 60°
- l) No T-intersection joints allowed, unless shown otherwise or approved by the Engineer in writing (and then suitably reinforced)

C2.3.6 Curing

- a) The contractor is to provide a curing method statement, to be approved by the Engineer.
- b) Apply approved liquid membrane-forming curing compound (Duracure SBW or similar approved) strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.
- c) Where architectural concrete finishes or adhesives for tiles are required, the suitability of the curing compound must be confirmed with the finishes/product suppliers before use.
- d) If the rate of evaporation from the concrete exceeds 1.0 l/m²/hour, additional precautions should be taken to reduce evaporation (prior to application of the curing compound). Refer to Annex A in SANS 10109-2 for the interactive graph to calculate evaporation rate. The Contractor shall submit his contingency plans to the Engineer for approval. The monitoring/calculation process requires a basic weather station on site. The Contractor shall allow for the provision of this in his rates.

C2.3.7 Mesh and reinforcement supports in surface beds

- a) No half bricks to be used as mesh/rebar support in surface beds.
- b) Concrete spacers are allowed for surface beds up to 125mm thick.
- c) Stools to be used for surface beds exceeding 125mm thick.
- d) Stools and spacers are to be placed at a spacing of no more than 60 times the supported bar diameter, but never more than 1m c/c, in each direction.

C3. Foundations

These notes are supplementary and should be read in conjunction with Section C1.

C3.1 Applicable Codes and Standards

Description	Code
Piling	SANS 1200 F

C3.2 Material Specifications

Refer to Section C1.2.

C3.3 Execution of Works

C3.3.1 Services near foundations and piles:

- a) The contractor shall locate and shut down all the existing water, fire and hydrant shut down valves in the relevant area prior to the commencement of excavations.

- b) The contractor shall ensure that all existing services drawings are issued to him by the relevant consultants. If there are no drawings available, the contractor shall locate services prior to the commencement of the excavations. Hand excavation shall be used to expose all services that are at risk.
 - c) The protection of all exposed services and services at risk during foundation placement and/or piling activities, shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
 - d) Where piles clash with services, the Engineer and the Quantity Surveyor is to be notified and all relocation costs must be approved prior to the commencement of relocation works. Alternatively, the design could be adjusted to accommodate services as may be dictated by site specific and/or cost restraints.
- C3.3.2 All foundations shall be positioned centrally under columns or walls, unless shown otherwise.
- C3.3.3 All foundation excavations, design bearing pressure and founding levels must be approved by the Geotechnical Engineer before commencement of any foundation blinding or concrete work.
- C3.3.4 Foundation levels shown on the Structural Engineer's drawings are preliminary and may vary depending on the Geotechnical Engineer's findings on site.
- C3.3.5 Founding levels changed on site are to be forwarded to the Engineer immediately to verify design requirements and correct reinforcing detailing of the affected vertical elements.
- C3.3.6 Portions that are over-excavated beyond the depth indicated on the drawings, but where such excavation was not called for by the Geotechnical Engineer, shall be backfilled to the correct level with material equal or better than the in-situ material, but at least equal to a G5 material. Alternatively, if agreed to in writing by the Engineer, mass concrete (15MPa / 20mm) may be used. This work will be at the Contractor's expense.
- C3.3.7 No foundation shall be cast on non-engineered fill or backfill material.
- C3.3.8 No excavations shall undermine any existing foundations.
- C3.3.9 50 mm blinding shall be cast under all pile caps unless indicated otherwise.
- C3.3.10 No blinding shall be cast under conventional foundations unless indicated on the drawings or instructed otherwise due to cohesionless (sandy) in-situ soils and/or high, water table issues, etc. If blinding is cast without prior approval or instruction, it will be for the Contractor's own account may cast blinding at his own expense or with the approval of the Quantity Surveyor.
- C3.3.11 Strip footings, retaining wall and column foundations shall be cast directly against the vertical faces of the excavation, unless indicated otherwise. Excavation for foundations to be vetted prior to casting of concrete where no blinding is installed.
- C3.3.12 No backfilling behind retaining walls shall be done before the Contractor obtains written approval from the Engineer. Where applicable, backfilling shall be done simultaneously on both sides of walls to minimise surcharge loading on walls.
- C3.3.13 All backfilling to surface beds and behind retaining walls is to be compacted to 95% MOD ASSHTO density (sand is to be compacted to 100% MOD AASHTO) in layers not exceeding 150mm in thickness.
- C3.3.14 The minimum required soil bearing capacity underneath foundations should be 150 kPa or as indicated on drawings. Contractor to allow for testing to confirm.

C3.3.15 As-built levels of all foundations will be forwarded to the Engineer for his records.

C3.4 Subsoil Drainage

C3.4.1 Excavation should be carried out when soil is at its driest.

C3.4.2 Start excavation and installation at the discharge point and work back to the start of the drains.

C3.4.3 Limit the trench width to 600mm

C3.4.4 Do not over excavate

C3.4.5 Regularly control the gradient of the excavation as well as the pipe by using a profile and boning rod.

C3.4.6 Place the filter material carefully with a minimum thickness of 100 mm around the pipe.

C3.4.7 The trench must be carefully backfilled to prevent the pipe from being damaged. Clay or soil of low permeability must not be used for backfilling.

C3.4.8 The last 6 m before the pipe exits should be un-slotted conduits with soil cement backfill to ensure that the water travels in the pipe and not the filter aggregate.

C3.4.9 Soil cement dykes should be constructed at regular intervals (+/- 20 m) to encourage the water to enter the pipe.

C3.4.10 Where the pipe acts primarily as a collector, the slots should face downwards, however, if the pipe acts mainly as a conveyor, the slots should be facing upward.

C3.4.11 Where subsoils daylight on the site, the outlet of the pipes should be protected with a wire mesh to prevent vermin etc. from nesting in the pipe.

C3.4.12 Provide rodding eyes at 50m intervals (max) or another suitable distance apart that will suit access/building layout.

C3.4.13 Install drawn wires to subsoil drainage pipes to enable easy clearing.

C3.4.14 Subsoil drainage maintenance notes:

- The outlet of the drain should be clear of vegetation. No trees should be planted above the pipe.
- With the above provisions, and in the event of subsoils being severely silted up, the pipes can be cleaned by high-pressure water jet machines, provided a working pressure of 8 bar is not exceeded.
- The system should be flushed once during the construction period (more than one month after installation).
- It is advisable for the owner to flush the drains during routine building maintenance/ repairs to confirm if the continual silting up of the subsoils is a problem, whereafter he should act accordingly.
- A subsoil drain will fail to function if the filter clogs or if the pipe is blocked. A pipe can be blocked as a result of:
 - o Deformations of the pipe as a result of incorrect backfilling around the pipe. Careful supervision is required when installing the pipes in narrow trenches.

- Silting up of the pipe locally at low points or at a change in gradient
- Silting up of a pipe over its entire length due to self-cleaning velocity not achieved in this type of drain. Initial silting up may result from fines present in the filter material being washed out. Thereafter it should remain fairly clean with only occasional cleaning required, subject to site conditions.

C3.5 Piling

- C3.5.1 Pile foundations shall be designed by a competent person and installed by an experienced piling contractor.
- C3.5.2 Piles shall be centred under columns, unless shown otherwise.
- C3.5.3 Pile caps shall be centred on piles, unless shown otherwise.
- C3.5.4 Maximum settlement allowed for any pile = 5mm.
- C3.5.5 Refer to piling drawings for proposed pile type and size (tbc by pile specialist) as well as loadings and cut-off levels.
- C3.5.6 Loads shown on layout is the safe working compression load per pile at cut-off level (SWL), i.e., Sound concrete required to this level. For ULS design checks, a load factor of 1.5 shall be used unless otherwise indicated in the load table.
- C3.5.7 Pile concrete strength shall be as per the design specifications, but minimum 25 MPa.
- C3.5.8 Refer to *Section C1.3.4* for minimum cover.
- C3.5.9 Top of pile to be stripped to provide a rough surface at pile cut-off level.
- C3.5.10 Details of pile design to be submitted to the Engineer for his records.
- C3.5.11 Vertical reinforcement to be minimum 0.8% of pile area, irrespective of the load.
- C3.5.12 Pile position tolerance: Maximum 50 mm from design position for single pile foundations, and maximum 75mm from design position for double/multi-pile foundations.
- C3.5.13 The piling contractor shall provide the completed pile records and an as-built survey of the pile locations and levels to the Engineer, immediately after installation of piles, but at least 48 hours prior to casting of pile caps. Piles not within the specified tolerances must immediately be reported to the Engineer, and clearly marked on this survey.
- C3.5.14 Integrity tests in the form of at least the sonic wave logging method shall be performed on all piles and the results submitted to the Engineer for review prior to the casting of pile caps or ground beams.
- C3.5.15 Main pile reinforcing shall extend minimum 40 times bar diameter into pile cap. Where this exceeds the depth of the pile cap, reinforcement shall be bent to suit.
- C3.5.16 Raked piles shall be inclined at a maximum angle of 1:8 from vertical.
- C3.5.17 Where applicable, bottom of all piles shall be thoroughly cleaned and inspected before casting of concrete.
- C3.5.18 The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with a guarantee of the allowable bearing capacity for each type of pile.

- C3.5.19 The piling contractor in conjunction with the main contractor to check for any and all services prior to installing any piles. Extra caution to be taken in areas where known services are present. (Also refer Section C3.3.1)

C4. Summary of information to be submitted to the Engineer

The following important information shall be submitted to the Engineer, for his records (in no particular order):

- C4.1 Concrete test cubes:
- Results at 7- and 28-days strength, as applicable.
 - Cube results to be clearly linked to element type, position, cast date, et cetera.
- C4.2 Casting dates and construction sequence:
- Contractor to provide detail programme and information flow, to be agreed upon with the Engineer 14 days ahead of any construction commencing.
- C4.3 Method statement for back-propping.
- C4.4 Construction joint locations and details to be clearly indicated on a set of Engineers' drawings.
- C4.5 Mill certificates for rebar.
- C4.6 Post-tension system to be used (4 weeks prior to installation) along with bursting rebar details and drawing with numbered cable layouts.
- C4.7 Post-tension stress results:
- Results and stress sequence to be summarised (cables to be clearly marked on cable layout drawings) and provided to the engineer within 7 days after cables have been stressed.
- C4.8 Method for curing of concrete elements.
- C4.9 Concrete mix design:
- The concrete mix design and associated test results and supporting documentation shall be forwarded to the Engineer, 14 days ahead of any casting of concrete.
- C4.10 Survey results of all ground bearing and suspended slabs in accordance with methodology as approved by the Engineer.
- C4.11 Piling records and survey results of as-built pile foundations.
- C4.12 As-built levels of foundations.

C5. Abbreviations

Concrete:

TOF	Top of footing
TOC	Top of column
TOW	Top of wall

SL	Soffit level
SSL	Structural slab level
PCL	Pile cut-off level

Reinforcement:

T	Top
B	Bottom
NF	Near face
FF	Far face
EF	Each face
CTL	Cut to length
CTF	Cut to fit
EW / BW	Each way / Both Ways
ABR	Alternating bars reversed
ALT	Alternating
STG	Staggered
TOG	Together
HOR	Horizontal
VER	Vertical

P.1 Post-Tensioning

These notes are supplementary and should be read in conjunction with Section C1.

P1.1 Applicable Codes and Standards

Description P	Code
Strand standards	<i>prEN 10138</i>
Post-tensioned concrete with regard to the use of unbonded tendons - recommendations	<i>Concrete Society Technical Report 17 (TR17)</i>
Post-tensioned flat slab design handbook	<i>Concrete Society Technical Report 25 (TR25)</i>

P1.2 Material Specifications

P1.2.1 Material properties:

- a) 15.7 mm diameter strand:
- 15.7 mm diameter low relaxation, 7 wire prestressing strand
 - Ultimate tensile stress: 1860 MPa (UTS)
 - Ultimate load of tendon: 279 kN
 - Tendon jack stress: 80% of UTS
 - Strand cross section area: 150 mm²
 - Modulus of elasticity: 195 GPa
 - Weight: 1.172 kg/m
- b) 15.3 mm diameter strands
- 15.3 mm diameter low relaxation, 7 wire prestressing strand
 - Ultimate tensile stress: 1860 MPa (UTS)
 - Ultimate load of tendon: 260 kN
 - Tendon jack stress: 80% of UTS
 - Strand cross section area: 140 mm²
 - Modulus of elasticity: 195 GPa
 - Weight: 1.093 kg/m
- c) 12.9 mm diameter strands:
- 12.9 mm diameter low relaxation, 7 wire prestressing strand
 - Ultimate tensile stress: 1860 MPa (UTS)
 - Ultimate load of tendon: 186 kN
 - Tendon jack stress: 80% of UTS
 - Strand cross section area: 100 mm²
 - Modulus of elasticity: 195 GPa
 - Weight: 0.785 kg/m

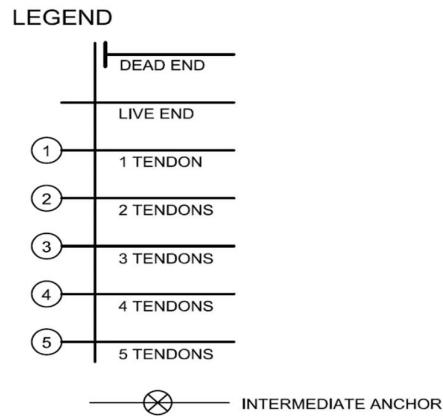
P1.2.1 Unless otherwise specified, 15.7mm diameter 1860 MPa, unbonded cables shall be used.

P1.2.2 Design assumptions shall be verified with the supplier of cables and reported to the Engineer:

- Designed as Class 3 element as defined in SANS 10100-1, with a maximum allowable crack width of 0.3 mm
- Design stress at transfer: $f_{ci} = 0.66 f_{cu}$
- Friction coefficient: $\mu = 0.05$
- Wobble factor: $k = 0.0025$
- Maximum wedge draw-in: 6mm

P1.3 Execution of Works

P1.3.1



P1.3.2 The tendon profile will be harped with cables parallel to deck soffit from quarter-span to quarter-span, unless noted otherwise. Profile measurements are provided at top of support, at midspan and at the end of slab.

P1.3.3 All profiles given indicate distance from slab soffit to underside of tendon unless shown otherwise.

P1.3.4 Distance between banded tendons shall be 100 mm unless otherwise shown.

P1.3.5 Cables to be supported at maximum 1.0m c/c.

P1.3.6 Stress sequence of cables to be as follows:

- 1 - 50% of banded cables
- 2 - 50% of beam cables
- 3 - Every second distributed cable
- 4 - Repeat sequence

P1.3.7 The tendon stress losses between anchors are to be determined by the post-tensioning Contractor based on the following:

- a) For stressing lengths up to 40 m:
 - Maximum allowable total loss at the dead anchor to be 15% compared to the lock-off force at the live anchor
- b) For stressing lengths exceeding 40m:
 - The contractor shall demonstrate to the engineer that 15% losses are not exceeded by testing the tendon forces at the dead side of the first representative pour.
 - For this purpose, live anchors should be cast on both sides for such a pour.

P1.3.8 The Contractor shall submit the details of the proposed pre-stressing system to the Engineer for his approval at least 4 weeks before commencement of installation.

P1.3.9 The Contractor shall be responsible to design and supply all anchors and bursting reinforcement.

P1.3.10 The Contractor shall submit all bursting rebar details to the Engineer for approval prior to installation.

- P1.3.11 The Contractor shall prepare placing drawings with cables numbered for stressing records. These drawings shall be submitted to the Engineer before stressing commences.
- P1.3.12 The Contractor shall clearly mark the positions of all cables on the slab soffit.
- P1.3.13 No drilling/coring into slabs shall be allowed without prior approval of the Engineer. Drilling and coring shall, once approved, only be done at least 75 mm away from the marked cable positions.
- P1.3.14 It remains the responsibility of the contractor to coordinate drilling/coring into slabs. Any damage to cables and/or any other consequential damages due to drilling/coring will be for the contractor's account.
- P1.3.15 Stressing to take place once the concrete has reached a compressive strength of 18MPa unless specified otherwise.
- P1.3.16 Dead, live and intermediate anchor positions shall be finalised by the Contractor in conjunction with the Engineer.
- P1.3.17 Formwork/props may only be removed after the supported element has been fully stressed.
- P1.3.18 Stools must be able to support a minimum weight of 100kg
- P1.3.19 All horizontal curves in cables to be tied back with Y16 U-Bars as per Engineers' details. (to be scheduled by the designer). Where such bars are not scheduled, the contractor shall inform the Engineer in writing.

B1. Masonry

B1.1 Applicable Codes and Standards

Description	Code
Masonry Cement	SANS 50413
Limes for use in buildings	SANS 523
Fine aggregates for plaster and mortar	SANS 1090
Calcium silicate masonry units	SANS 285
Clay masonry units	SANS 227
Concrete masonry blocks	SANS 1215
Metal ties for cavity walls	SANS 28
Hot-dip (galvanized) zinc coatings on steel wire	SANS 675 / SANS 935
Brickwork: Aspects of work on site	SANS 10164-1 Appendix B
Masonry Walling	SANS 2001-CM1
Cement Plaster	SANS 2001-EM1
Concrete masonry construction	SANS 10145

B1.2 Material Specifications

B1.2.1 Compressive strength of brickwork: minimum 7 MPa except for engineering bricks (designated with E followed by minimum compressive strength required) as set out below:

Location	Type	Designation
All foundation walls, retaining walls	Non-Facing Extra (loadbearing/engineering brick)	<i>NFX</i>
Structural masonry – plastered	Non-Facing Plastered (loadbearing/engineering brick)	<i>NFP</i>
All facebrick with high degree of uniformity (as specified by Architect)	Face Brick Extra (Loadbearing and non-loadbearing)	<i>FBX</i>
All facebrick with standard degree of uniformity (as specified by Architect)	Face Brick Standard (Loadbearing and non-loadbearing)	<i>FBS</i>
All facebrick selected or produced for aesthetic effect derived from non-uniformity of size, shape and colour (as specified by Architect)	Face Brick Aesthetic (Loadbearing and non-loadbearing)	<i>FBA</i>
All boundary walls, infill panels, divider walls, etc.	Non-Facing Plastered (non-loadbearing)	<i>NFP</i>
Engineering bricks for double storey structures, or as specified on drawings	Types as above	***E14 as above

No burnt clay masonry with a moisture expansion exceeding 0.2% may be used.

B1.2.2 Mortar class:

Type / Location	Mortar class
For all uses	II

B1.2.3 Brick Reinforcement:

Type	
Ladder type brickforce Crimp wire ties	2.8 mm – 3.55 mm $\varnothing$ wire
Butterfly, crimp wire and all similar wire ties	3.15 mm $\varnothing$
Vertical twist type ties	20(+1) mm wd x 4(+1) mm thk
Rod Reinforcement in bed joints (Hard drawn wire, straight bars only)	5.6 mm – 6 mm $\varnothing$
Minimum characteristic yield stress (f_y) for rods and wire products	485 MPa
Minimum lap length for brickforce	300 mm

Minimum lap length for rod reinforcement	Not allowed over openings 500 mm for continuous reinforcement
Hoop iron straps (All wall ties and concertina straps)	30 mm wd x 1.2 mm thk solid straps only
Hoop iron straps for timber roof truss tie-down	30 mm wd x 1.6 mm thk

B1.2.4 Corrosion protection for brick reinforcement:

- a) All wire products shall have Grade 1 zinc coating in accordance with SANS 935 (e.g., 275 g/m² zinc coating for wire with nominal diameter ranging from 2.5 mm to 3.5 mm; equivalent average coating thickness as per SANS 675 = 38 µm).
- b) Rod reinforcement shall have a galvanized coating equivalent to at least 275 g/m².
- c) Hoop iron straps and vertical twist type ties shall be from continuously galvanized plate sheets with a Z275 coating.
- d) If the site is within 1 km of the coast, all products mentioned above shall be manufactured from austenitic stainless steel. (Some pockets of land may need this specification up to 10km from the coast; refer to local experience or specialist literature on a case-by-case basis)

B1.2.5 A masonry unit is defined as solid if it contains no cavities or cavities not exceeding 25% of the gross volume of the unit.

B1.2.6 All engineering bricks shall have water absorption in the range of 7% to 12% (*Refer SANS 10164-1 Clause 6.5 for test methodology*).

B1.2.7 Masonry preparation before placement:

- a) Clay bricks shall not be laid within 6 weeks of removal from the kiln.
- b) Calcium silicate bricks and clay bricks with an initial absorption rate of less than 1.8 g/m²/min shall be laid slightly wetted but not saturated. Surface must be dry when laid.
- c) Clay bricks with an initial absorption rate of more than 1.8 g/m²/min shall be thoroughly wetted (but not saturated) 24 hours before being laid. Surface must be dry when laid. (*Refer SANS 10164-1 Clause 6.6 for methodology*) (*Simple field test: pour a measured volume of water from a graduated container into a tray or pan. Insert the base of a standard size solid brick approximately 7 mm into the water for 1 minute and remove. Pour the remaining water back into the graduated container and record the difference in volume. The abovementioned initial absorption threshold is not exceeded if less than 40 ml of water was absorbed.*)
- d) Concrete bricks and blocks shall be laid dry to prevent excessive shrinkage cracking in the wall.

B1.3 Execution of Works

B1.3.1 Masonry Tolerances (SANS 2001-CM1 Table 13):

Type / Location	Mortar class
All masonry	Degree of Accuracy II

B1.3.2 Masonry bond (Refer SANS 2001-CM1 Figure 1)

- a) All single leaf masonry and cavity walls, plastered or unplastered, shall be constructed in the stretcher bond pattern, unless instructed otherwise by the Architect.
- b) All solid double leaf masonry to be plastered shall be constructed in the stretcher bond pattern and collar-jointed with crimp wire ties. Alternatively, the crimp wire ties may be omitted, and the english garden wall bond used (three courses of stretcher bond followed by a header course).
- c) All solid double leaf masonry to be left unplastered for aesthetic purposes (non-face and face bricks), shall be constructed as per clause (b) above, unless instructed otherwise by the Architect.

B1.3.3 Brickforce, rod reinforcement and wall ties for brick masonry

- a) For foundation walls, brickforce shall be placed in every course.
- b) Brickforce shall be placed in the first two bed joints above the floor, then every fourth course (non-loadbearing walls) or every second course (loadbearing walls), and finally in every course above all openings with the brickforce extending at least 600mm beyond the opening.
- c) Rod reinforcement shall be placed as follows: two rods in one bed joint immediately below windows and it shall extend 600 mm beyond the opening, then two continuous rods in the uppermost bed joint of external walls and one continuous rod in the uppermost bed joint of internal walls.
- d) All reinforcement, including brickforce, shall be discontinuous at articulation joints.
- e) Crimp wire ties in double leaf walls shall be provided at a rate of 5 ties per m² unless the English garden wall bond is used (refer B1.3.2 (a) above).
- f) Butterfly ties shall be provided in cavities greater than 50 mm but less than 75 mm wide at a rate of 4 ties per m². Polypropylene ties may also be used, subject to the Engineer's approval in writing.
- g) Vertical twist type ties shall be provided in cavities 75 mm to 150 mm wide, at a rate of 4 ties per m².
- h) Tie spacings in B1.3.3 (i) and B1.3.3 (j) shall be reduced to every second course vertically and to less than 300 mm c/c horizontally next to openings or any other masonry leaf discontinuity (e.g., next to windows, columns and below floor slabs supported on a cavity wall).
- i) Butterfly and vertical twist type ties shall be built at least 50 mm into the mortar joint of each leaf, while maintaining a minimum of 40 mm side cover.
- j) Hoop iron strap concertina ties (minimum 800 mm long overall) shall be provided over articulation joints every fourth course.
- k) Hoop iron strap ties (minimum 800 mm long overall) shall be fixed to columns (or laid across wall joints where the bricks are not interlocked) every fourth course. 6 mm nail plugs shall be used; no shot fixing is allowed.

B1.3.4 Brickforce, rod reinforcement and wall ties for block masonry:

- a) For foundation walls, brickforce shall be placed in every course.
- b) Brickforce shall be placed in the first two bed joints above the floor, then every second course (non-loadbearing walls) or every course (loadbearing walls), and finally in every course above all openings with the brickforce extending at least 600mm beyond the opening.

- c) Rod reinforcement shall be placed as follows: two rods in one bed joint immediately below windows and it shall extend 600 mm beyond the opening, then two continuous rods in the uppermost bed joint of external walls and one continuous rod in the uppermost bed joint of internal walls.
- d) All reinforcement, including brickforce, shall be discontinuous at articulation joints.
- e) Crimp wire ties in double leaf walls shall be provided at a rate of 4 ties per m².
- f) Butterfly ties shall be provided in cavities greater than 50 mm but less than 75 mm wide at a rate of 4 ties per m². Polypropylene ties may also be used, subject to the Engineer's approval in writing.
- g) Vertical twist type ties shall be provided in cavities 75 mm to 150 mm wide, at a rate of 4 ties per m².
- h) Tie spacings in 1.3.3.6 and 1.3.3.7 shall be reduced to every course vertically and to less than 300 mm c/c horizontally next to openings or any other masonry leaf discontinuity (e.g., next to windows, columns and below floor slabs supported on a cavity wall).
- i) Butterfly and vertical twist type ties shall be built at least 50 mm into the mortar joint of each leaf, while maintaining a minimum of 40 mm side cover.
- j) Hoop iron strap concertina ties (minimum 800 mm long overall) shall be provided over articulation joints every second course.
- k) Hoop iron strap ties (minimum 800 mm long overall) shall be fixed to columns (or laid across wall joints where the bricks are not interlocked) every second course. 6 mm nail plugs shall be used; no shot fixing is allowed.

B1.3.5 Mortar joints:

- a) Perpend and collar joints shall not be greater than 20 mm.
- b) For unplastered walls, joints shall be flush unless specified otherwise by the Architect.
- c) For plastered walls, joints shall be raked out to a depth of no more than 5 mm to provide a mechanical key for the plaster.
- d) All other bed joints shall not be greater than 15 mm

B1.3.6 Masonry over openings:

- a) Prestressed concrete lintels shall generally be used over all openings, including doors.
- b) Prestressed lintels shall have a minimum of 5 No. prestressed cold drawn, crimped wires of minimum 2.64 mm diameter.
- c) Where facebrick is used over openings, a brick beam shall be provided in accordance with a separate standard detail.
- d) Where blockwork is used, bond or U-shaped block lintels with reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with a separate standard detail.
- e) Lintels and brick beams shall be propped during construction of brickwork above and remain propped for a minimum of 7 days after completion of the brickwork over.
- f) Lintels may be omitted for smaller openings where Clisco frames are used. Any particular details to be considered with this deviation from standard practice shall first be discussed and agreed with the Engineer in writing prior to proceeding with construction.

B1.3.7 Joints

- a) Slip Joints

The top of all load-bearing brick- or blockwork to be plastered smooth with 3:1 cement mortar, minimum 5 mm thick. Two layers of 500µm Gunplas to be placed on walls prior to casting of concrete and turned up to break contact between

b) Movement and articulation joints

For non-load-bearing brick- or blockwork, allow 10mm soft joint (Jointex) between top of wall and concrete members, such as beam/slab soffits. The same applies to vertical joints between walls and concrete columns, and all other concrete-to-brick interfaces as well as brick to brick interfaces.

c) Joints to be sealed in accordance with Architect's specifications and Fire Engineer's requirements. All joint sealants shall have a backing cord or other suitable compressible backing material. The sealant geometry is critical for proper joint performance and careful attention must be paid to this during installation (generally up to 10mm the width to depth ratio is 1:1, for wider joints it is 2:1; refer to and comply in all respects to the manufacturer's specifications).

d) All joints to continue through plaster and finishes.

e) Soft board does not qualify as a soft joint filler material.

B1.3.8 Chases for services

a) Vertical chases in walls of solid unit construction shall be limited to $1/3^{rd}$ of the thickness of the wall or leaf (in case of a cavity wall).

b) Horizontal chases in walls of solid unit construction shall not be allowed.

c) Hollow units shall not be chased. If unavoidable, limit chases to 15mm deep. For deeper chases the entire cavity behind the chasing shall be solidly filled with concrete or low shrink grout to be approved by Engineer.

B1.3.9 Brick- or blockwork on suspended concrete slabs to be built only when:

a) Concrete slab has reached its required design compressive strength.

b) All support work and props have been removed.

B1.3.10 Refer to drawings for loadbearing brick wall positions. All brickwork indicated on engineering drawings is loadbearing brickwork unless otherwise specified.

B1.3.11 For high-lift grouted walls, ties complying with the requirements of SANS 10164 Part 2 Annex A shall be spaced at intervals not exceeding 900 mm horizontally and not exceeding 300 mm vertically, with each layer staggered by 450 mm.

B1.3.12 See architect's drawings for general layout of brick/block work. All setting out is to be done from the architect's drawings.

B1.3.13 Tops of cavity walls to be ventilated as long as possible to prevent the trapping of moisture or damp during the construction process.

B1.3.14 Brick walls on un-piled foundations will be separate from walls on piled foundations. Stability requirements of elements over joints must be met.

B1.3.15 Where cavities in masonry walls are to be filled with concrete, it shall be poured in lifts not exceeding 500 mm. Contractor shall clean all loose and spilt mortar and debris out of the bottom of the cavity prior to pouring any concrete. Cover to reinforcement to be maintained as stipulated, but at all times not less than 30 mm.

- B1.3.16 Retaining walls shall have subsoil drains behind the wall as per typical details supplied on drawings. In the absence of such details, drainage shall be provided in the form of 50 mm plastic pipes through the wall at a maximum height of 300 mm above the lower finished ground level and at a maximum spacing of 1.5 m c/c. Geofabric shall be secured over the non-exposed end of the pipe.
- B1.3.17 All planters built up in brickwork must receive 50 mm weepholes above the finished floor levels, at 1 m c/c. Geofabric shall be secured over the non-exposed end of the pipe.
- B1.3.18 Clay and cement bricks are not to be used in the same walls. A vertical joint to be constructed between walls of dissimilar bricks. (Cavity walls qualify.)
- B1.3.19 All brick walls built up higher than 1 m without perpendicular walls or stiffeners in place, must be temporarily supported laterally until brick walls or stiffeners are in place.
- B1.3.20 All perimeter brick infill panels between structural concrete and steel columns are to be temporarily supported laterally, if the brick wall height exceeds 1 m, until the roof structure is complete.
- B1.3.21 Brick panels may not exceed 7.5 m in length without a vertical joint. Brick stiffeners, concrete columns or steel columns are to coincide with the vertical joints.
- B1.3.22 Cement plaster
- a) 42.5N Cements and above shall not be used for plaster purposes.
 - b) Only potable water may be used for preparing cement plaster.
 - c) Plaster mesh (metal lath) shall be used over all areas chased for conduits or pipes. The mesh shall be minimum 250 mm wide and extend at least 115 mm past the edge of a chase.
 - d) Plaster mesh (metal lath) strips 500 mm long x 200 mm wide shall be placed diagonally at the corners of all doors, window, and ventilation openings.
 - e) Plaster mesh (metal lath) shall comply to SANS 2001-EM1, i.e., have a minimum aperture of 6 mm, be pre-galvanized mild steel and have a minimum strand thickness of 0.5 mm. It shall exhibit no signs of cracking or fracture at the metal strands when bent through 90 degrees in either direction over a 6 mm radius mandrel.
 - f) Plaster mesh (metal lath) shall be fixed in place using galvanized or cadmium nails at roughly 300 mm c/c both ways. The mesh/lath shall be about 5 mm away from the substrate and tightly stretched during fixing to ensure minimal waviness. Mesh/lath sheets shall be overlapped at least 25 mm and wired together with galvanized wire of at least 1,2 mm diameter. Laps are only allowed away from corners and curves. All mesh/lath cut edges and damaged nails shall be treated with a bitumen-based product or rust-inhibiting paint.
 - g) Where plaster mesh (metal lath) is not measured in the BoQ, it shall be reported to the Engineer and/or the cost of the mesh/lath shall be approved by the Quantity Surveyor prior to implementation.
 - h) The surface to be plastered, shall be free from oil, dirt and free from substances that may negatively affect the bond of the plaster to the substrate. Solvents shall not be used, and any curing compounds shall be removed by mechanical means.
 - i) Mortar joints shall be raked to a depth of about 10 mm to provide a mechanical key for plaster.
 - j) Before applying plaster, smooth surfaces shall be roughened (wirebrush green concrete or abrasive blast) or covered with a spatterdash layer (1 cement: 1.5 sand and water to provide a sluggish pourable consistency)

resulting in the entire substrate having nodules about 5 mm high and no further than 50 mm apart. Spatterdash shall be tested for adhesion and strength by probing with a screwdriver before proceeding with plaster.

- k) Plastering may only commence once all chasing and conduit installations are complete.
- l) Plaster coats shall be 10 mm to 16 mm thick, or as specified by the architect.
- m) Walls shall be checked for planeness. Where plaster thickness will vary more than 10 mm and result in a thickness in excess of 16 mm, plaster shall be applied in multiple coats as follows:
 - First plaster coat: 8 – 16 mm thick
 - Second plaster coat (if any): 6 – 10 mm thick
 - Top plaster coat: 5 – 8 mm thick

In no instance shall plaster be applied to a total thickness of more than 22 mm.

- n) Where multiple plaster coats are required, the undercoats shall be deeply scored to provide a mechanical key for the coats to follow. Scoring should consist of roughly parallel lines about 20 mm apart and 5 mm deep. Thin scratch coats are not considered good practice.
- o) Plaster curing is crucial. Keep damp for at least 3 days after completion of a plaster coat. Do not apply further plaster coats before the preceding coat can bear the new coat and adhere properly to it. It must be applied such to limit drying shrinkage, crazing, and cracking of the subsequent coat.
- p) Plaster tolerance shall be a maximum of 6 mm under a 2 m straight edge, unless specified otherwise by the Architect.
- q) Refer to the Architect's plaster specifications for particulars required in various areas.
- r) Refer to Architect's specifications for movement joint sealant. Irrespective of such specifications, the plaster shall be V-shaped at joints and the sealant applied to the substrate (brick, concrete) and not to the plaster.

S.1 STRUCTURAL STEEL

S1.1 Applicable Codes and Standards

Description	Code
Construction Works: Structural Steelwork and Cladding	<i>SANS 2001-CS1</i>
Handrailing and Balustrading	<i>SANS 10104</i>
Roof and side cladding	<i>SANS 10237</i>
Hot Rolled products of Structural Steel	<i>SANS 50025</i>
Steel tubes for structural applications	<i>SANS 657-1</i>
Welding procedures, welders	<i>SANS 10044: Part III & IV</i>
Butt welds	<i>AWS D 1.1</i>
Hot dip galvanizing	<i>SANS 121 / ISO 1461</i>
Hot dip galvanizing for steel tubes	<i>SANS 32 / EN 10240</i>
Continuous Hot-Dip Zinc-Coated Carbon Steel of Structural and Commercial Quality	<i>SANS 4998, SANS 3575</i>

Classification of Environments, Types of Surfaces and Surface Preparation, and Protective Paint Systems	<i>ISO 12944, Parts II, IV & V</i>
Preparation of steel substrates	<i>ISO 8501-1</i>

S1.2 Material Specifications

S1.2.1 Hot rolled steel:

- All hot rolled steel sections shall be Grade S355JR

S1.2.2 Cold-formed steel:

- All cold-formed steel sections shall have a minimum yield stress of 250 MPa

S1.2.3 Bolts, nuts, and washers:

- All bolts to be Grade 8.8
- All bolts to be hot-dip galvanised

S1.2.4 Welds:

- All welders shall be coded welders
- For SMAW (shielded metal arc welding), Class E7018 electrodes shall be used unless indicated otherwise
- Welding processes other than SMAW may be used, subject to submission by the steel fabricator to the Engineer of the applicable details of the process, the machines used in the process and the details of the electrodes to be used.

S1.2.5 Fire protection:

- All structural steel shall be fire protected as per the Fire Consultants' specification where applicable

S1.2.6 Corrosion protection:

- Hot dip galvanizing shall be applied by a galvanizer who is a member of The Hot Dip Galvanizers' Association of South Africa (HDGASA).
- All hot rolled steel sections shall be corrosion protected as per Corrosion Protection section below.
- All cold-formed steel sections shall be hot-dip galvanised to Z275 unless indicated otherwise. If HDG applies, no further corrosion protection (paint) shall be applied, unless indicated otherwise or specified by the Architect for aesthetic purposes.

S1.3 Workshop Drawings

S1.3.1 The steel sub-contractor shall arrange with the Engineer a discussion/workshop where the general details, connection details, splice requirements due to transport limitations, splice details, special erection requirements/sequences, etc. shall be confirmed before draughting of shop drawings are commenced.

S1.3.2 The Contractor shall generate detail shop drawings. These shall be forwarded to the Engineer for evaluation at least 10 working days before the scheduled fabrication date. The Engineer shall be allowed four days for scrutinizing the shop drawings and marking up changes, details, or other additions to the drawings. Shop drawings

shall be resubmitted for confirmation of incorporation of the Engineer's requirements, unless indicated otherwise on the marked-up drawings.

S1.3.3 Note that the Engineer's drawings are design drawings and not intended for fabrication purposes.

S1.3.4 Details of shop drawings to include the following:

- Anchor bolt and cast-in plate layout and details.
- Roof steel layout showing truss, girder, column, bracing positions, et cetera.
- Truss and girder elevations and details.
- All connections and splice details.

S1.3.5 Any connections not shown on the Engineer's drawings shall be brought to the Engineer's attention in writing.

S1.3.6 Bolted and welded connections detailed on the shop drawings shall allow for development of the full tensile capacity of the connected member, unless detailed otherwise by the Engineer.

S1.3.7 The Engineer's general notes take preference, irrespective of any comments or notes made on the workshop drawings by the Contractor.

S1.4 Fabrication and Erection

S1.4.1 The Contractor shall confirm in writing and demonstrate to the Engineer that he has an adequate quality assurance plan in place prior to commencement of fabrication.

S1.4.2 The Contractor shall submit, in writing, his proposed erection method statement to the Engineer for review and comment. Compliance with this requirement will in no way absolve the Contractor from his responsibility to produce the final product in accordance with the Engineer's design drawings.

S1.4.3 All dimensions shall be checked on site prior to commencement of manufacturing.

S1.4.4 All discrepancies and variation from the design drawings shall be brought to the Engineer's attention prior to manufacturing.

S1.4.5 Where temporary bracing or propping is required, the contractor shall be responsible for the design, erection, maintenance and removal of such supports.

S1.4.6 Bolted Connections:

- Bolt edge distances shall be minimum 2.5x bolt diameter up to M16 bolts and 2x bolt diameter for M20 and larger bolts.
- Bolt spacing shall be 70 mm up to M20 bolts, 100 mm for M24 and M30 bolts, and 120 mm for M36 bolts. Bolts larger than M36 shall be spaced at 3x bolt diameter or more.
- Number of bolts shall be installed as per structural requirements (refer clause S.1.3.6).
- Bolted connections to have a minimum of two bolts unless shown otherwise.
- Bolt holes to be drilled or laser-cut, not punched.
- Allow 25mm slotted holes for steel members fixed to concrete -- 12mm each side where no moment or tension transfer between connections is required.

- Drilled and laser-cut holes shall be 2 mm larger than bolt diameter up to M24 bolts and 3 mm larger than bolt diameter for M30 and larger bolts.
- Drilled and laser-cut holes in base plates shall be 6 mm larger than bolt diameter up to M24 bolts, 10 mm larger for M30 and M36 bolts, and 15 mm larger for M42 bolts and larger.

S1.4.7 Welded Connections - General:

- No site cutting or welding will be allowed unless approved or specified by the Engineer.
- All anchor bolts welded onto anchor plates need to be inserted into holes in the plate and then welded on with full penetration welds from both sides of the plate.
- All truss and girder members to be welded all round both sides. Allow for gusset plates to ensure adequate welding length to develop full tensile capacity of members (refer clause S.1.3.6).
- All slag and spatter shall be removed.
- The Contractor shall produce evidence acceptable to the Engineer that welders have been tested and that welding procedures have been followed, all in accordance with SANS 10044: Part III & IV.
- Shop and site welds shall be tested as part of the contractor's quality assurance plan. All welds shall be visually inspected and at least 15% of all site welds shall be submitted to non-destructive testing.

S1.4.8 Welded Connections - Plate girders:

- Continuous fillet welds either side of the web to both flanges. Weld size as specified.
- The approach/techniques used for plate girder welding shall be such to prevent undue distortions and minimize shrinkage stresses in the structure.
- 15% of all shop butt welds shall be examined using the ultrasound method. Radiography (X-ray) may also be used, subject to the required safety precautions being in place. Welds to be selected randomly.
- 100% of site butt welds shall be examined using the ultrasound method. Radiography (X-ray) may be used, subject to the required safety precautions being in place.
- The standard of acceptance of butt welds shall be the applicable requirements of AWS Code D 1.1.

S1.4.9 Centroids of all members to intersect at node points unless detailed otherwise by the Engineer.

S1.4.10 Where post-fixed connections are proposed (mechanical- or chemical-anchors), the details shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval. All connections shall be installed strictly in accordance with the supplier's specifications. Site personnel to be trained under the supervision of the anchor suppliers to ensure installation requirements will be met on site.

S1.4.11 The Engineer may request, at his own discretion, spot testing of installed anchors. Pull-out tests shall be limited to 10% of all anchors.

S1.4.12 Steelwork delivered to site shall be stacked on timber supports at least 300mm above ground level. Trusses and girders to be stored vertically.

S1.4.13 Approved non-shrink grout shall be placed under all steel supported on concrete. The Contractor shall submit details of the proposed product to the Engineer for approval. Grouting shall be completed before any primary loads are applied to the structure.

S1.4.14 Plate girders:

- Top level of columns shall correspond with the level of the top flange or the uppermost connected floor beam, unless shown otherwise.
- The centroids of diagonal members shall intersect the centroids of the columns/beams to which it is connected, unless shown otherwise.
- All members are positioned centrally on gridlines, unless shown otherwise.

S1.4.15 Prior to the installation of sheeting, the following actions are required:

- The steel contractor shall inspect the structure to ensure that all cross bracing, knee bracing, and fly bracing and all connections and splices are in place and correct.
- After the above has been complete the contractor must sign off the roof.
- The engineer is to be provided with the inspection sheets.
- The sheeting subcontractor must accept the lines and relative levels of the steel structure in writing prior to commencement with the installation of the sheeting.

S1.4.16 Truss cambers (unless otherwise specified):

- 15 – 20 m spans 30 mm
- 20 – 25 m spans 50 mm
- 25 m and larger spans span/400 (70 mm minimum)

S1.4.17 A suitable gap shall be allowed around all structural elements passing through brick walls and cladding elements. This shall be discussed beforehand with the Architect and Engineer.

S1.5 Corrosion Protection

S1.5.1 Corrosivity Categories

For the purposes of this specification, the atmospheric environments related to the corrosivity categories will be as follows:

Corrosivity Category	Corrosivity	Description
C1 Indoor	Very Low	<i>Interiors of heated buildings with clean atmospheres</i>
C2 Indoor	Low	<i>Interiors of unheated buildings where condensation may occur</i>
C3 Indoor	Medium	<i>Interiors of production facilities with limited air pollution</i>
C3 Outdoor	Medium	<i>Exterior application for inland urban areas</i>
C4	High	<i>Exterior application for inland industrial areas</i>
C5-I	Very High (Industrial)	<i>Exterior application for industrial areas near the coast</i>
C5-M	Very High (Marine)	<i>Interior and exterior application for coastal and offshore areas as well as buildings with almost permanent condensation and high pollution</i>

S1.5.2 Category C1 Indoor (Application examples: steel wall stiffeners for brick and dry wall)

a) Surface preparation according to ISO 12944-4 to preparation grade St 3

- b) Surfaces must be clean and free from oil and all loose particles
- c) Apply one coat zinc chromate (alkyd) primer by brush, roller, or airless spray (DFT = 60 µm)
- d) Durability Category: not rated, but expected to be High to Very High (life expectancy 15 - 25+ years)

S1.5.3 Category C2 Indoor (Application examples: structural steel in roof spaces)

- a) Remove all oil and grease by washing with a water emulsifiable solvent degreaser and rinsing with potable water to a water break free surface.
- b) Grit blasting done in accordance with ISO 8501-1 – Sa 2 ½ (also refer ISO 12944-4), with a blasting profile of 40 – 75 µm.
- c) Apply one coat two-component, high solids zinc phosphate epoxy primer, e.g., SigmaFast 278, by airless spray (DFT = 120 µm)
- d) Primer Colour: grey; Gloss level: flat
- e) Durability Category: High (life expectancy 15 – 25 years)

S1.5.4 Category C3 Indoor and Outdoor

- a) Start with Category C2 Indoor specification (a) to (d), then -
- b) After minimum 2 hours interval (at 20°C), apply one coat two-component, high build aliphatic acrylic polyurethane (UV-resistant) topcoat, e.g., Sigmadur 520, by brush, roller, or airless spray (DFT = 50 µm)
- c) Topcoat Colour: refer Architect's specification or as agreed with client; Gloss level: semi-gloss, unless specified otherwise by the Architect.
- d) Paint System: Total DFT = 170 µm
- e) Durability Category: Medium (life expectancy 7 – 15 years)

NOTE: To upgrade Durability Category to High (life expectancy 15 – 25 years), increase primer coat to DFT = 150 µm; Paint System Total DFT = 200 µm

S1.5.5 Category C4

- a) Remove all oil and grease by washing with a water emulsifiable solvent degreaser and rinsing with potable water to a water break free surface.
- b) Grit blasting done in accordance with ISO 8501-1 – Sa 2 ½ (also refer ISO 12944-4), with a blasting profile of 40 – 75 µm.
- c) Apply one coat two-component, high solids, zinc phosphate epoxy primer and buildcoat, e.g., SigmaFast 278, by airless spray (DFT = 190 µm, subject to product ability and performance).
- d) Primer Colour: grey; Gloss level: flat
- e) After minimum 2 hours interval (at 20°C), apply one coat two-component, high build aliphatic acrylic polyurethane (UV-resistant) topcoat, e.g., Sigmadur 520, by brush, roller, or airless spray (DFT = 50 µm)
- f) Topcoat Colour: refer Architect's specification or as agreed with client; Gloss level: semi-gloss, unless specified otherwise by the Architect.
- g) Paint System: Total DFT = 240 µm
- h) Durability Category: Medium (life expectancy 7 – 15 years)

NOTE: 1. The primer coat in (c) above may be applied as two equal coats for more security.

2. To upgrade Durability Category to High (life expectancy 15 – 25 years), increase primer coat to DFT = 230 µm; Paint System Total DFT = 280 µm.

S1.5.6 Category C5-I and C5-M

- a) Remove all oil and grease by washing with a water emulsifiable solvent degreaser and rinsing with potable water to a water break free surface.
- b) Grit blasting done in accordance with ISO 8501-1 – Sa 2 ½ (also refer ISO 12944-4), with a blasting profile of 40 – 75 µm.
- c) Apply one coat two-component, high solids, zinc phosphate epoxy primer and buildcoat, e.g., SigmaFast 278, by airless spray (DFT = 250 µm)
- d) Primer Colour: grey; Gloss level: flat
- e) After minimum 2 hours interval (at 20°C), apply one coat two-component, high build aliphatic acrylic polyurethane (UV-resistant) topcoat, e.g., Sigmadur 520, by brush, roller, or airless spray (DFT = 50 µm)
- f) Topcoat Colour: refer Architect's specification or as agreed with client; Gloss level: semi-gloss, unless specified otherwise by the Architect.
- g) Paint System: Total DFT = 300 µm
- h) Durability Category: Medium (life expectancy 7 – 15 years)

NOTE: 1. The primer coat in (c) above may be applied as two equal coats for more security.

2. To upgrade Durability Category to High (life expectancy 15 – 25 years), use a duplex system, i.e., hot dip galvanizing and paint.

S1.5.7 In C3 and C4 environments where structural steel is required to remain unpainted due to maintenance requirements, the steel shall be hot dip galvanized. Refer drawings for areas of application.

S1.5.8 In C5-I and C5-M environments where a duplex coating system is preferred, the following is indicative, but the final system shall be confirmed by the supplier and submitted to the Engineer for review:

- a) Steel to be hot dip galvanized in accordance with SANS 121.
- b) Abrasive sweep blast at reduced pressure to a blast profile of 40 – 50 µm. Vacuum clean all debris from the substrate.
- c) Use the Wattman Paper, Weber Reilly, or similar test method to ensure that the Soluble Salts/Chloride content complies with SANS 5770.
- d) Apply one coat two-component, high build, polyamine adduct-cured epoxy coating, e.g., Sigmashield 880, by airless spray (DFT = 200 µm).
- e) Primer Colour: TBC based on availability; Gloss level: Gloss
- f) After minimum overcoating interval (note that a maximum interval may also apply), apply one coat two-component, high build aliphatic acrylic polyurethane (UV-resistant) topcoat, e.g., Sigmadur 550, by brush, roller, or airless spray (DFT = 50 µm)
- g) Topcoat Colour: refer Architect's specification or as agreed with client; Gloss level: Gloss, unless specified otherwise by the Architect.

NOTE: Where HDG steel will be partially buried, the portion under the finished ground level will be protected by the Sigmashield 880. The UV-resistant topcoat can be omitted for the portion below finished ground level.

- S1.5.9 Steel shall be kept in a dry and very low corrosive environment and primer shall be applied within four hours of abrasive blasting.
- S1.5.10 Where plates or other smaller items need to be stored before hot dip galvanizing or painting, the items shall be wrapped in a suitable plastic/cling wrap with a silicone gel desiccant inside to further draw out any trapped moisture.
- S1.5.11 Steel shall be allowed to cure for a minimum of 24 hours prior to further handling. Transportation will only be allowed after the primer and/or topcoat has been fully cured.
- S1.5.13 All damaged areas to be repaired on site.
- S1.5.14 The paint supplier shall confirm, before acceptance, the guarantees they can offer based on the products that comply with the specification. The supplier will be required to submit their guarantee certificate in writing upon completion of the steelwork installation and it will be submitted to the client as part of the close-out documents.

S1.6 Cladding

- S1.6.1 Cladding shall be done to SANS 2001-CS1 as well as the suppliers' specifications.
- S1.6.2 All roof and side cladding shall be as per the Architect's specification.
- S1.6.3 The cladding contractor shall provide temporary support to ensure purlins and girts remain straight during installation of cladding and insulation material.
- S1.6.4 Cladding shall only commence once all bracing is installed by the Contractor and inspected and approved by the Engineer.

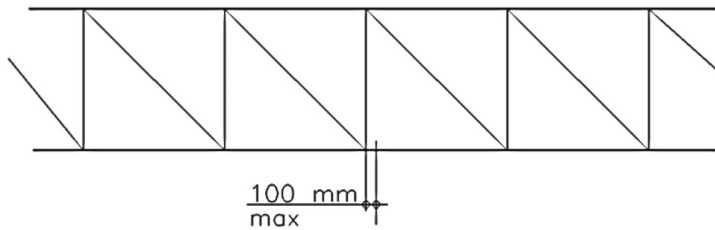
S1.7 Fixing of Services to Roof Structure

- S1.7.1 Fixing of purlins are to be done by screwing or bolting through the centre of the vertical leg (web) of the purlin. Purlin clamps shall not be allowed anywhere.



- S1.7.2 Services shall not be hung from purlins until roof sheeting is installed.
- S1.7.3 Main pipe runs, and heavy items are to be suspended from trusses and girders only. If in doubt, enquire with the Engineer.

- S1.7.4 Fixing points for any item attached to trusses and girders shall never be more than 100 mm from a node point. Approved flange clamps may be used.



- S1.7.5 Where support for heavy items is required in between trusses and girders, additional support members and fixing details to the main structure shall be proposed and submitted by the Contractor/sub-contractor and approved by the Engineer prior to installation.
- S1.7.6 No fixing to longitudinal ties / fly bracing shall be allowed.
- S1.7.7 Tie and bracing connections shall never be more than 100 mm from a node point.
- S1.7.8 Feeder pipes and other lightweight elements:
- Running perpendicular to purlins shall be suspended from every purlin it crosses
 - Running parallel to purlins shall be suspended from two adjacent purlins with a suitable support system (e.g., Cab-Strut) at maximum 1 500 mm c/c.
- S1.7.9 Penetrations and holes required in galvanised steel shall be predrilled before steel is galvanised. No drilling is allowed on site in any galvanised structural steel members.
- S1.7.10 Where the hot dip galvanized coating requires repair, only Galvpatch® shall be used, as approved by the Hot Dip Galvanizer's Association of South Africa (HDGASA) for hot dip galvanizing repairs. Application shall be strictly in accordance with the latest data sheets and recommendations from HDGASA.

S1.8 Gutters, Downpipes and Launder Pipes

S1.8.1 Gutters

- a) Gutters shall be manufactured from 3 mm thick structural steel plate and hot dip galvanized, unless specified otherwise on the drawings.
- b) For additional waterproofing specifications on gutters, refer to the specifications on the drawings.
- c) Joints on gutters, outlet spigots and overflows shall be welded and Galvpatch® shall be applied over welded areas, as approved by HDGASA. Bitumen coating inside gutters unless specified otherwise.

S1.8.2 Downpipes

- a) External downpipes may be steel to match the gutter or uPVC Class 9. Refer to specifications on drawings.
- b) Downpipes cast into concrete element shall be secured into the fullbore cast-in items in accordance with the fullbore supplier's specifications and/or the waterproofing specialist's details. This information will be submitted to the Engineer for review prior to installation. HDPE Class 6.

- c) Material and joint specifications for downpipes cast into concrete shall be confirmed with the Launder prior to installation.
- d) Gutter downpipes shall be installed as close as possible to the soffit of the gutter/hopper box.
- e) The gutter spigot/downpipe connection shall be one of the following:
 - a flange, welded and repaired as described for gutter welds
 - Victaulic coupling
 - Klamflex stepped coupling where applicable
- f) The contractor shall ensure that downpipes are free from obstructions and that the shape is circular (or square where applicable) for the entire length, prior to connecting the ends of the downpipes.

S1.8.3 Launder Pipes

- a) All external launder pipes shall be UPVC class 9, unless specified otherwise.
- b) All internal launder pipes shall be HDPE and supplied in straight lengths. All pipes and fittings shall be at least Class 4, unless specified otherwise.
- c) HDPE joints shall be welded.
- d) Where pipe size steps, provide Klamflex stepped couplings with double sleeve design to prevent end pull-out. The Klamflex coupling corrosion protection shall be fusion bonded epoxy.
- e) Minimum fall on all launder pipes shall be 1:100.
- f) Fall as indicated on drawings to be maintained (subject to (e) above). Any deviations from specified falls shall be brought to the attention of the Engineer.
- g) All connections between HDPE downpipes and launder pipes shall be fitted with a suitable HDPE bend and welded together.
- h) Launder pipe bends shall limited to 45 degrees in all instances, unless expressly agreed to or instructed by the Engineer.
- i) Connections between different downpipe and launder pipe materials shall be fitted with a HDPE bend welded to the launder pipe and fixed to the downpipe with a Klamflex coupling.

S1.8.4 Pipe supports

- a) All pipes to be supported with suitable brackets to carry the weight of the pipe when filled with water.
- b) For 250 mm diameter pipes, brackets to be placed at a minimum of 2 m c/c and brackets to be placed 500 mm from either side of any joint or connection.

S1.8.5 Testing

- a) All gutters, downpipes and launder pipes are to be tested prior to sheeting the roof and prior to connecting to any stormwater system. The test should be done by plugging downpipes and filling the system with water to the top of the gutter and the water level maintained. All joints to be checked for leaks after 24 hours.
- b) Gutters and downpipes are to be maintained and cleaned regularly during construction. A certificate of compliance with the above is to be furnished to the client at hand over.

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

PWA : FENCING

INDEX

Item	Description	Page No
PWA1	SCOPE	PWA-1
PWA2	MATERIALS	PWA-1
PWA3	CORROSION PROTECTION	PWA-2
PWA4	CONSTRUCTION	PWA-2
PWA5	FINISHING: TRIMMING AND PAINTING	PWA-4
PWA6	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT	PWA-5

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PWA FENCING

PWA1 SCOPE

This specification includes all work in connection with the erection of fencing and taking down and re-erection of fencing as required. The standard of fencing, the positioning of the gates and the quantities shown in the Schedule of Quantities against each item under this section, may be subject to variation and the Contractor shall ascertain, from the Engineer, the exact location of, and specification to which the fencing shall be constructed, before placing any order for materials.

PWA2 MATERIALS

PWA2.1 Vermin, Stock Proof and Residential Fencing

Straining posts and stays, standards and droppers shall be either of timber or steel sections. All sections shall be to the dimensions and masses indicated on the Drawings. Timber sections shall be of creosote impregnated hardwood. Steel sections shall be either galvanised or painted to the specifications that are indicated on the Drawings.

All plain wire, barbed wire, wire netting, diamond mesh and blinding wire shall be according to the diameters and specifications indicated on the Drawings.

PWA2.2 Security Fencing

All posts, standards and droppers for security fencing shall be galvanised steel sections to the dimensions and details indicated on the Drawings. Plain and diamond wire and other fencing material shall all be according to the details indicated on the Drawings. All gates shall be to the details indicated on the Drawings and components shall either be galvanised or painted according to the specifications on the Drawings.

PWA2.3 Bolts

Bolts shall be galvanised steel bolts of the required length and diameter which shall not be less than 12mm. Eyebolts to gates of 18mm diameter. All the necessary bolts together with nuts and washers, shall be supplied with each post or gate.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PWA-1

PWA3 CORROSION PROTECTION

PWA3.1 General

All component of the security fence, excluding concertina barbed tape coils, shall be hot dip galvanised to the following requirements:

PWA3.2 Fencing Posts

Fabricate all posts from mild steel with due attention to Clause 6. After fabrication, fencing posts shall be hot dip galvanised to comply with SABS 763. The bottom of fencing posts to be buried in soil shall be cleaned in accordance with PSL 6.1.4 then coated with one coat water based vinyl chloride-vinylidene chloride copolymer primer, containing zinc phosphate, to a dry film thickness of 16 hours drying, then apply two coats bituminous aluminium paint, complying with SABS 802, allowing a minimum of 16 hours between coats and a minimum of 3 days before burial.

The coating shall cover the whole of the base plate and upwards to a height of not less than 800mm above ground. The total dry film thickness of a primer and bituminous aluminium shall not be less than 80 micrometers.

PWA3.3 Straining wires, fencing wire, tie wires and barbed wire

Shall not be hot dip galvanised to comply with SABS 675 Class A, or SABS 935, as appropriate.

PWA4 CONSTRUCTION

PWA4.1 Clearing of Fence Site

All brush and other obstructions which may interfere with the proper construction of the fences shall be removed and surface irregularities shall be graded so that the fence will conform to the general contour of the ground.

No separate payment will be made for this clearing and full provision for these coats must be made in the tender.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PWA4.2 Connections

Existing cross fences shall be connected to the new fences. Straining posts with stays for every direction of strain shall be placed at the junction with existing fences and the wires of both fences properly fastened to the posts.

PWA4.3 Placing of Posts

All posts, struts and standards shall be firmly planted into the natural ground, be it soil, gravel or rock to the depths detailed. Gate posts and struts shall be erected at all gates and straining posts and struts shall be erected at all ends and corners or bends in the line of the fence and at all junctions with other fences. Intermediate straining posts and struts, and standards shall be spaced at the intervals indicated on the Drawings. All posts (excepting struts), standards and droppers shall be placed in a vertical position except in unusual locations where, in the opinion of the Engineer, it will be more satisfactory to place such member perpendicular to the slope of the ground. All posts, struts, standards and droppers shall be set in holes dug to the specified depth even in rock where blasting might be necessary to obtain the required depth. All gate posts shall be set in concrete and other members shall either be set in concrete or in well compacted backfill as indicated on the Drawings. No concreting or backfilling shall be done until all members have been properly aligned. All posts and struts for security fencing shall be set in concrete as shown on the Drawings. Steel members, not required to be set in concrete, may be driven into the ground provided such members are not buckled or otherwise damaged after being driven in, and provided further that correct alignment on the driven members is maintained.

PWA4.4 Attaching Wire

After all posts, struts and standards have been set firmly and after all concrete has hardened for at least four days the fence wire shall be attached accordingly to the details indicated on the Drawings. All wire shall be attached to the sides of the posts and standards furthest from the object being fenced. Wire shall be carefully stretched and strung in true alignment and without sag. Wire shall be attached to each post and standard by one of the following methods:

- (a) By notching the member and securing the wire by means of binding wire or;

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- (b) By drilling holes through the member and strapping the wire with plain iron samples passing completely through the member or;
- (c) Where iron members are used, by securing the wire by means of binding wire which must pass through the hole in the standard. Droppers shall be placed parallel to the standard at the intervals detailed on the drawings. Droppers shall be fixed to each fence wire with binding wire in such a manner as to prevent any slipping.

PWA4.5 Attaching Wire Netting or Diamond Mesh

Wire netting and diamond mesh covering shall be securely fixed to the fence according to the details on the drawings. In addition the wire netting on vermin proof fencing shall be fixed according to the Engineer's instruction by one of the following methods:

- (a) By packing stones, placed end to end, on both sides of the fence so that no gap exist beneath the fence, or
- (b) By folding back the bottom 150mm of wire netting so that it lies flat on the ground, and packing stones end to end on this flap, or
- (c) By embedding the lower part of the wire netting at least 100mm into the ground and ramming the earth thoroughly to secure the netting.

PWA4.6 Installing Gates

Gates shall be installed in the position indicated by the Engineer. The gates shall be erected so as to swing in a horizontal plane at right angles to gate post clear of the ground in all positions.

PWA5 FINISHING: TRIMMING AND PAINTING

Where timber posts have been used, the tops of the posts shall be trimmed after the fencing has been erected, such that the top of the completed fence has a pleasing profile. The cuts shall be literally painted with creosote. All ungalvanised metal components of fencing shall be painted according to the specifications on the Drawings. After the fencing has been erected, any chipped or damaged paint work shall be touched up according to the same paint specifications.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

PWA6 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

PWA6.1 Vermin Proof, Stock Proof, Residential and Security Fencing

This fencing shall be measured in metres between the centres of gate and end posts along the general slope of the ground. Payment shall include full compensation for the clearing of the line, for the supply, painting and erection of all standards, intermediate straining posts and stays, droppers, plain wire, blinding wire, and all other components on the drawings but shall specifically exclude corner, end and gate posts and their stays. Payment shall also include for the concreting of posts where specified.

PWA6.2 Corners, Bends and Ends

Corners, ends and bends shall be measured by the number and shall include compensation for the supply, painting and erection of all posts and stays required at such ends, corners or bends shall also include for any concreting where so specified.

PWA6.3 Gates

Gates shall be measured by the number. A double gate as required for security fencing shall be measured as on number double gate. Payment shall include full compensation for the supply, painting and erection of the gate and ancillary components, as well as for the supply, painting and erection of gate posts and struts and for the concreting of such posts and struts (where required).

PWA6.4 Pay Items

1.	Vermin proof fencing	:	m
2.	Stock proof fencing	:	m
3.	Residential fencing	:	m
4.	Security fencing	:	m
5.	Corners, bends and ends (Shall distinguish between the different types of fencing)	:	No

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- | | | | |
|-----|---|---|----|
| 6. | Gates (shall distinguish between the different types and dimensions of gates) | : | No |
| 7. | Taking down and re-erection of fencing (shall distinguish between the different types of fencing) | : | m |
| 8. | Taking down an re-erection of corners, bends and ends | : | No |
| 9. | Taking down and re-erection of Gates | : | No |
| 10. | Maintenance of fence for the duration of contract. (Shall distinguish between the different types of fencing) | : | m |
| 11. | Taking down fence at the end of the contract and hand materials to the Employer | : | m |

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2025

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

PARTICULAR ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

SECTION ES LV: LOW VOLTAGE CABLE NETWORK

CONTENTS

LV.1	SCOPE
LV.2	MATERIALS
LV.3	EXCAVATIONS
LV.4	INSTALLATION OF CABLES
LV.5	JOINTING AND TERMINATION OF LOW VOLTAGE CABLES
LV.6	TEST BEFORE ACCEPTANCE
LV.7	INFORMATION REGARDING THE COMPLETED NETWORK
LV.8	CLEARING OF SITE
LV.9	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT
ANNEXURE:	LOW VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION FEEDER FUSE SCHEDULE

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

LV.1 SCOPE

This section covers the manufacture, supply, delivery and installations of the low voltage cables.

LV.2 MATERIALS

(a) Low voltage cable

Low voltage cables shall be in accordance with SANS 1507, SANS 101198; Part6, SANS 1411: Part 1-6 and shall be PVC insulated, with either stranded or solid copper or aluminium conductors as specified in the Project Specification, PVC bedded, steel wire armoured, and PVC sheathed.

The armouring shall consist of one layer of round galvanized steel wire.

(b) Cable drums

The cable drums shall be capable of taking a round spindle and be lagged with strong, closely fitted battens, at the inner and outer circumference so as to prevent damage to the cables. Contractor to use a timber spreader with lifting slings and the correct size spindle to off-load the cable. The spindle bearing plates shall be steel. The dimensions of the drum shall not exceed 1 100 mm width, 2 000 mm diameter and the spindle bearing plate shall not be less than 9 mm thick. Each drum shall be clearly marked on both sides with the following particulars:

- (a) Voltage
- (b) Actual cable length
- (c) Conductor size (cross-sectional area and stranding)
- (d) Number of cores
- (e) Finish.
- (f) Drum number
- (g) Gross mass
- (h) Nett mass
- (i) Direction of rotation
- (j) Manufacturers project or job number

The ends of the PVC sheathed cable shall be sealed to avoid penetration of moisture.

The end protruding from the drum shall be protected against mechanical damage. The requirement of Section 7 of SANS 97 shall be adhered to.

(c) Low voltage cable joints and terminations

Low voltage joints shall be of the epoxy-resin type.

Cable glands shall be of the adjustable type, equal or similar to the Pratley type gland and shall be suitable for use with PVC, SWA, PVC cable complying with SABS 150 of 1970. All glands shall be installed with non-deteriorating neoprene shrouds.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Bi-metallic aluminium-copper lugs, equal or similar to SIMEL type ACX, shall be used according to the manufacturer's specifications, where solid aluminium conductors are terminated onto copper bus bars or circuit breakers.

All cables shall be delivered to site with the correct type and size of heat shrink cable end-cap, all cut cable stored shall be heat shrink capped to prevent moist entry. The contract shall replace any uncapped cable at his cost with new cable if found onsite by the Engineer.

(d) Earth continuity conductors

Earth continuity conductors shall comprise of stranded copper conductors of cross-section indicated in the Project Specification.

A single earth conductor may be used where two or more cables run together, providing the earth conductor cross-sectional area is based on the largest size cable in the run.

All earth conductors shall be terminated using correct size crimped cable lugs.

Only cadmium plated bolts, nuts and spring washers shall be used for fixing earth conductors to earth bars.

Joining of earth conductors shall be done using the Cad-weld process.

(e) Cable route markers

Cable route markers shall be constructed of reinforced concrete and shall be of dimensions indicated on the tender drawings.

(f) Concrete protective slabs

Concrete protective slabs shall have the following dimensions:

Length	1 000 mm
Width	350 mm
Thickness	50 mm

The slabs shall be constructed of 20 MPa concrete and each slab shall be reinforced with one longitudinal and three transverse mild steel rod of minimum diameter 8 mm. The slabs shall be manufactured in such a way that the slabs interlock with each other thus avoiding shifting of the slabs after installation.

(g) Cable sleeves

Cable sleeves shall be manufactured from PVC the standard size to be used is 110 and 160 mm diameter. Refer to cable sleeve specification. All sleeves shall protrude 1000mm from the road surface crossed at both sides.

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

LV.3 EXCAVATIONS

(a) General

The contractor shall preserve the site as far as possible. Only the minimum of trees, shrubs, rocks, etc. shall be removed and cleared for the cable routes.

Where surplus material has to be disposed of the Contractor shall dump the material in the area provided by the Employer for stockpiling his material, in 25km radius from the site.

The contractor shall at his own cost load and transport to the abovementioned site all surplus material, unsuitable material for backfilling, etc.

(b) Trench routes

The cable trench shall be excavated along the routes indicated on the plan.

The trench shall be absolutely straight and shall comply with all requirements. The Engineer shall determine the length of the trench to be excavated, which shall not exceed 400m, before the cable is installed and the trench backfilled. If any obstacle or interference should be encountered which may require alterations to the trench or routes, such alterations shall receive prior written approval of the Engineer.

Contractor shall make provision for cross over's at car gate entrances, etc., if required.

(c) Cable trench

The trench shall be excavated to a depth below final ground level as specified:

- Cable sleeves 1000 mm
- MV-feeder cables 1000 mm
- House connections - bus routes 1000 mm
- House connections - non bus routes 600 mm (Including pavements)
- House connections - inside stands 500 mm

The excavation of all trenches for the low voltage cables in the road reserves shall be undertaken by the Contractor.

The bottom of the trench shall be level and shall follow the contours of the final road level. Where the excavation is in excess of the required depth, the excavation shall be backfilled and compacted with suitable material to the required depth.

The contractor shall trim the trenches and clean up the bottom of the trenches after he has completed the required excavation. Bedding and cables shall not be laid until the trench has been approved by the Engineer. Where bedding has already been laid the Engineer may instruct the contractor to demonstrate that the minimum thickness of bedding has been provided for before authorizing cable laying to proceed.

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

The contractor shall remove all sharp projections which could damage the cable where the trench is excavated through rocky formations, and shall remove all loose rocks, material, etc. from the bottom of the trench.

(d) Excavated material

No excavated material shall be left closer than 300 mm from the side of the excavation. The excavated material which is considered by the Engineer to be suitable for bedding material for the cable shall be placed separately on one side of the trench so that it is available when required. The excavated material shall take up as small an area as possible with the safety of the workmen and Works taken into consideration.

(e) Inspection and measurement of excavations

Once the excavations for cable trenches and jointing pits have been completed, the Contractor shall give the Engineer 24 hours' notice to inspect the trench and to be present when the measurements are made. No inspections shall be undertaken on Saturdays, Sundays and public holidays and after 14:00 in the afternoon.

(f) Maintenance of excavations

The contractor shall maintain the excavation in a good condition, free of water, mud, loose ground, rocks, stones, gravel and other strange material until the cables are installed and the excavation is backfilled and compacted.

LV.4 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

Unless otherwise specified the installation depth of LV-cables shall be as follows:

- LV-Feeder Cables to be 600mm below finished ground level.
- House connection cables to be 600mm on sidewalk and 450mm inside stand boundary.
- All road crossings shall be in sleeves at 1100mm below road surface.

(a) Sand bed for cables

A sand bed layer of soft soil shall be installed and levelled at the bottom of each trench after the trench has been approved by the Engineer, and prior to cable laying.
A minimum thickness of the sand bed layer is 50mm.

If the material that has been excavated is not suitable for the sand bed layer then suitable soil shall be imported for this purpose. The cost thereof shall be included in the unit price for the excavation unless otherwise specified.

An adequate quantity of soil similar to the sand bed material shall be available next to the excavation for the sand bed cover before an inspection of the cables is called for. The sand bed cover shall be a minimum of 100mm thick and shall be placed directly after the cable has been inspected.

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

If the soil for the sand bed and sand cover has to be sifted, a sieve with holes not larger than 10mm shall be used.

(b) Cables shall be laid without delay

The cable shall, after the completion of the trench, be laid with the minimum of delay so that the trench can be backfilled. The contractor shall, however, not backfill the trench until each length of cable has been inspected and approved by the Engineer.

Only one cable shall be laid at a time and the contractor shall take precautions that the cables which are already installed are not damaged.

(c) Laying of cables

The method to be used for laying cables shall be approved by the Engineer prior to the commencement of the laying of the cables.

If the contractor intends using a winch to draw the cable into the trench, a cable stocking shall be used or the draw wires shall be soldered to the cable so that the tension is exerted on all the cores and steel wire armouring at the same time.

The maximum tension on a cable during laying operations shall not exceed the value specified by the manufacturer. The tension force shall not be more than the force needed to pull 50m of the applicable cable, but if this value is more than that is specified by the manufacturer, the manufacturer's value will apply.

Should the Engineer not be satisfied with the manner or method employed to lay the cable he shall have the authority to instruct the contractor to lay the cable by hand or in accordance with approved standards.

1.5 Meter extra lengths of cable shall be left at the beginning and end of the cable routes to allow for the termination of the cables. Where necessary the Engineer shall decide on what length of cable is to be left. The contractor shall take the necessary precautions to protect the cable ends until they are terminated. The cable ends shall be sealed by means of lead sealing caps to ensure that the cable is waterproof. No PVC sealing caps to be used.

Where cables are drawn through sleeves, care shall be taken that they are not kinked or excessively bend. No bend in a cable shall have a radius less than the minimum bending radius specified by the cable manufacturer.

The contractor shall keep accurate records of each length of cable laid. The following information shall be recorded:

- Cable drum number
- Size of cable
- Laid from where to where
- Length of cable
- Date laid

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

The contractor shall be liable for the repair of the cable due to the faulty manufacture of the cable, should this information not be recorded directly after the cable has been laid.

Every cable shall be marked by means of a lead label on which the size of cable and its source or destination is punched. The label shall be installed around the inner PVC sheath immediately above the cable gland.

(d) Road crossings

The cable sleeves shall be installed 1.0m below ground level to avoid damage when the roads are constructed.

Unless otherwise specified, two additional sleeves shall be installed for future use at each road crossing.

Sleeves used for crossings shall be straight and undamaged. Bends shall not be allowed in road crossings.

The sleeves shall be meticulously backfilled so that no air pockets are left. The trench shall thereafter be backfilled in layers of 150mm and compacted with mechanical vibrators to 95% modified AASHTO density.

The contractor shall lay and join the cable sleeves and compact the trench to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The sleeves shall be meticulously backfilled so that no air pockets are left. The trench shall thereafter be backfilled in layers of 150 mm and compacted with mechanical vibrators to 95% modified AASHTO density. After installation, the sleeves shall be cleaned and a galvanized steel draw wire installed in the sleeve prior to the sleeve ends being sealed by means of plastic plugs.

Where specified cable route markers shall be installed to indicate the cable sleeves. The markers shall be buried in the ground directly over the sleeve with the top protruding 50 mm above the finished ground level.

(e) Crossing of other services

Where a cable crosses over other services, the cable shall not be installed at a depth less than 500 mm below ground level and if this is not possible the cable shall be installed underneath the other service and shall be protected by means of concrete slabs. The depth of the cable shall be maintained for one metre on either side of the crossing.

If it is not possible to cross over or underneath a service in the prescribed manner, the matter shall be referred to the Engineer for a decision.

The following minimum clearances shall be maintained between electrical cables and other services:

	<u>Horizontal</u>	<u>Vertical</u>
GPO Cables	0.3 m	0.3 m

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Water pipes	0.3 m	0.3 m
Sewer pipes	0.3 m	0.8 m
Storm water pipes	0.3 m	0.6 m
Other electrical cables	0.15 m	0.15 m

(f) Backfilling of trenches

When the cable has been laid, inspected and approved and the sand bed cover has been installed, the trench shall be backfilled with soil containing not more than 40% rock or shale which shall be able to pass through a 75 mm sieve and which is approved by the Engineer.

Where more than 40%, but less than 70% rock occurs, the Contractor shall replace the rock with imported soil. However, should more than 70% rock occur then all the backfilling material shall be imported.

- The contractor may import further stone-free material to the site or sieve the excavated material for sand bedding and cover but payment shall only be compensated for the actual quantity of imported material required as determined by the Engineer. The quantity of imported material required shall be calculated from the nominal trench width.
- The excavated material shall be backfilled in layers of 300 mm and shall be well compacted and consolidated. Where necessary the Engineer may require that a mechanical vibrator be used for compacting the trench.
- The contractor shall maintain the completed sections of the cable trench in a proper safe condition for the duration of the contract. The contractor shall refill and compact the trench where subsidence occurs.
- After completion of the work the route of the cable shall be neatly finished off and cleared. All stones bigger than 25 mm as well as and rubble shall be removed.

LV.5 JOINTING AND TERMINATION OF LOW-VOLTAGE CABLES

No joints shall be allowed in the new low-voltage cables without the prior approval of the Engineer.

The main low-voltage cables shall be terminated on the same side of the distribution kiosk from where the cable feeds from or supplies to.

The termination of low-voltage cables to overhead line or bundle conductor systems will be done by bi-metal (AL/CU) groove or IPC clamps and cable ties, and for main low-voltage feeder cables double clamps shall be used to insure good termination.

Armouring shall be properly installed into the steel gland and where K-clams are specified then shall at least 8 strands be terminated to the earth bar of the distribution kiosk or board.

LV.6 TESTS BEFORE ACCEPTANCE

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

After the completion of the electrical installation, the contractor shall test the installation in accordance with the SANS1507.

The Engineer shall have the right to call for or to carry out any additional tests which may be necessary to prove that the requirements of the specification have been met. The contractor shall assist with the conducting of these tests without delay. All tests shall be conducted in the presence of the Engineer.

(a) General

The tests hereinafter described comprise only the site tests and tests before acceptance or handing over of the installation. Where cables and other material are supplied by the contractor the factory and manufacturing tests shall be as specified in the specification.

After the installing and completion of the installation, before the service is taken over, the following tests shall be undertaken. These tests shall form an integral part of the erection, construction or installation of the various items and the costs thereof shall be included in the unit rates for the erection, construction or installation of the various items.

(b) Tests on low-voltage cables

(i) Phase and continuity tests

The phasing and continuity of each circuit shall be determined by meggering between each phase and earth while the phase is short circuited to earth at the far end of the cable route.

(ii) Voltage insulation tests

The insulation resistance shall be determined by imposing a 1 000 volt DC test voltage between each individual phase and earth at the miniature substations. The insulation resistance shall not be less than 50 mega ohm.

LV.7 INFORMATION REGARDING THE COMPLETED NETWORK

The contractor shall submit the "as built" drawings on which complete information of the installation, as installed, is indicated after the completion of the installation and before the installation is handed over to the Engineer.

LV.8 CLEARING OF SITE

The contractor shall remove everything that he brought onto the site or handled on the site in the execution of the contract as well as all excess excavated material and rubble so as to leave the site in a neat and clean condition to the satisfaction of the Engineer after the completion of the contract and after the Engineer's approval has been obtained.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

LV.9 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

LV.9.1 Excavation

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.1.1 Excavate in all materials for trenches, backfill, compact and dispose of surplus material	m ³

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material excavated for by hand or excavation equipment trenches, classified according to the depth and width specified listed. The width classification shall be in accordance with the authorized dimensions and the depth classification in accordance with the total depth of the trench and not with the depth range in which the material is situated before excavation. The depth of excavation shall be measured to the underside of the bedding.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for clearing and grubbing the trench areas and the temporary removal of improvements from the line of the trench, for excavating the trench, preparing the bottom of the trench, separating material unsuitable for backfill, keeping the excavations safe, dealing with any surface or subsurface water, and for separating topsoil and selected backfill material where necessary.

The rate shall furthermore cover the costs of installing the sand bed and sand cover, backfilling, compacting and disposing of the surplus material.

When the tender calls for a labour intensive tender, all excavation work shall be by hand, the Contractor shall obtain written approval from the Engineer before any excavation shall be made with confessional excavator equipment, i.e. Hogger, Back-actor or Ditch-switch.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.1.2 Extra over for excavating in hard material	m ³

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material excavated and classified as hard, in accordance with the classification set out hereunder.

The tendered rate shall be paid over and above the rate tendered for excavation in respect of items LV.9.1.1 in full compensation for the additional cost of excavating in hard material instead of soft.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for any over break as well as the additional backfilling required, reinstating the trench bottom, and for any other incidentals resulting from over break.

The materials excavated shall be classified as follows for payment purposes:

- a) Hard rock:

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

Material classified as hard rock shall mean such as granite, quartzite, sand stone, solid shale, slate and rock of similar or greater hardness and boulders exceeding 0,15 cubic metre in volume, but more than 70% of the excavation encountered per cubic metre must comply to size (smaller than 0,15 cubic metre), excavated with the blasting.

b) Soft rock:

Material classified as soft rock shall mean rock can be loosened by use of pneumatic tools, or hand pick, crowbar wedging or splitting, material such as hard shale, compact "ou klip", stone or material of similar hardness and boulders exceeding 75mm in diameter but not exceeding 0,15 cubic metre, but more than 70 % of the excavations encountered per cubic metre must comply to size (bigger than 0,15 cubic metre).

The decision of the Engineer as to the classification of the material shall be final and binding and any objection as to the classification shall be made before the excavation has been backfilled.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.1.3 Excavate by hand in all materials	m ³

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of trench material excavated by means of hand tools as instructed or authorized in writing by the Engineer where the use of conventional excavating equipment is either impractical or likely to cause damage to services, trees or property or where the Contractor has to excavate by hand where he cannot excavate by machine.

The volumes of the trench excavation will be computed from the length and the depth to the bottom of the specified bedding layer and the minimum base widths specified in the Detail Specifications. The rate shall cover the cost of complying with the safety and protection requirements specified except where particular items are scheduled to cover particular costs for the excavation.

The tendered rate shall be paid extra over the rates tendered for item LV.9.1 in full compensation for the additional expense of excavating by means of hand labour instead of conventional trenching equipment. This rate shall only apply if a site instruction was issued by Employer prior to commencement of the work.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.1.4 Extra over item LV.9.1.1 for using backfill material obtained from	m ³
(a) Borrow areas	
(b) Sources provided by the Contractor	m ³

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of imported backfill material.

The tendered rate for item LV.9.1.4(a) paid extra over item LV.9.1.1 shall be in full compensation for the additional cost of excavating and selecting of suitable material and the moving of the material to the backfilling site.

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

Items LV.9.1.4(a) and (b) above will not be measured for payment unless importation has been ordered in writing. The volume will be computed from the trench width and the depth from ground level to the top of the sand bed cover as shown on the tender drawings. The rate for material from designated borrow pits shall cover the cost of excavation and selection of suitable material, the moving of the material to the backfilling site, and the disposal of the material that becomes surplus as a result of the importation, all within 25 km.

The tendered rate for item LV.9.1.4(b) paid extra over item LV.9.1.1 shall cover the cost of the acquisition of the material and of the disposal of the surplus material resulting from the importation together with all the costs of transporting the material to the site regardless of distance.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.2 Supply LV cable	m

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, off-loading and delivery to site of the specified cable. Cables shall be measured linearly over all lengths laid. Separate items shall be scheduled for each size and each type of cable laid.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.3 Lay LV cable	m

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling, inspecting, laying, cutting and testing the cable. Cables shall be measured linearly over all lengths laid. Separate items shall be scheduled for each size and each type of cable laid.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.4 Termination of LV cables	No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for providing the cable glands, shrouds and lugs and the costs of handling, fitting and cutting the cable. Separate items shall be scheduled for each size and type of cable.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.5 Jointing of LV cable	No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the cost of providing the joint kits complete with ferrules and the cost of cutting the cable, handling and fitting the kits and the costs of testing the joints. Separate items shall be scheduled for each size and type of cable.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.6 Supply and lay earth continuity conductor	m

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring, furnishing and laying the specified

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

earth continuity conductor. Separate items shall be scheduled for each size of cable laid.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.7 Terminate and connect earth continuity conductor	No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supplying all the material required such as brass clamps, lugs, etc., to terminate and connect the earth continuity conductors and the connecting thereof to the earth bars in the miniature substations, distribution kiosks, meter board or earth spike.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.8 Supply cable markers	No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, off-loading and delivery of the cable markers to site and the cost of handling.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.9 Erect cable markers	No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling and erection of cable markers as specified and punching the correct approved inscription on the maker label.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.10 Supply protective slabs or covers	No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supplying, handling and delivery of the concrete protective slabs or fibre covers to site.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.11 Install protective slabs or covers	No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling and installing of the concrete slabs or Fibre tiles.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
LV.9.12 Supply cable sleeves	m

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the cable sleeves including the joints, steel draw wires and plugs and the cost of handling and delivery of the cable sleeves to site. Separate items shall be scheduled for each sleeve size.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

Section C3.5

Management

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK**

C3.5 MANAGEMENT

C3.5.1 Management of the Works

C3.5.1.1 Concurrent Construction Contracts

The Contractor's attention is drawn to the fact that other contiguous works will be executed concurrently by independent Contractor's under separate contracts on Site or in the vicinity of the Site.

The other Works which will be in progress or will come into operation on or adjacent to the Site of the Works during the progress or tenancy of this Contract are likely to include, but are not limited to the following:

Contractor for the Remedial Work to 491 RDP Houses Phase 1 of Lerato Park
Contractor for the civil services in Phase 6 of Lerato Park
Contractor for the building 100 BNG houses in Lerato Park Phase 5

The Contractor shall ensure that neither his operations nor those of his subcontractors nor the activities of his employees shall interfere with or hinder the operations of the Employer or of other Contractors and he shall indemnify the Employer against all claims arising through default of this requirement.

The Contractor shall hand over portions of the Site of the Works (whether completed or not), or completed portions of the Works, to these Contractors when required by the Employer or detailed elsewhere in this document. The Contractor shall cause no interference with or delays in the execution of these contiguous contracts.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

No discount or commission for the Contractor is allowed on these contracts, and it will be assumed that he has fully allowed in the Contract Price for the presence of these Contractors on Site. Any service rendered or assistance given by the Contractor to these Contractors, save as are provided for in the Project Specifications, shall be for their accounts only since the Employer shall in no way be responsible to the Contractor for any payments in this respect.

The Contractor shall protect all known existing services as well as all work being carried out and structures being erected on the Site by other Contractors. Any damage caused to these services or structures, or any obstructions or hindrance caused to other contractors by the Contractor, and all claims arising there from, will be the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

All repair work shall be carried out at the Contractor's expense to the entire satisfaction of the Engineer/Principal Agent.

The same obligations shall be imposed on the Employer and on other Contractors in respect of the Works being executed under this Contract.

C3.5.1.2 Contractor's Project Management Plan

The Contractor is required to prepare and submit a project management plan for the construction. The particular contents that should be included in the Contractor's Project Management Plan are listed below:

- Project structures and agreements

The Contractor shall indicate how responsibility for the various work packages will be divided between joint venture partners (where applicable) and sub-contractors. A contract organogram shall be provided showing work apportionment and project management responsibilities. The particular division of work shall match the established capabilities and capacities of each particular partner or subcontractor.

- Plant, materials and equipment

The Contractor shall prepare a Plant and Materials procurement plan, indicating the source of key Plant and Materials designated for inclusion in the Works, and demonstrating that such Plant and Materials have a proven track record of successful maintenance support in South Africa.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

The Contractor shall also prepare a plan of Contractor's Equipment, indicating the source and details of construction equipment planned for use on the Contract and based on the Contractor's particular approach.

- Staffing plan

The Contractor shall prepare a detailed staffing plan showing in an organogram all key members of the Contractor's Personnel, providing a detailed CV for each such key position. The Contractor shall also show the numbers and source of all non key staff and indicating the particular local content offering of the Contractor.

- Method statements

The Contractor shall clearly describe the overall methodology proposed for construction of the Works and include particular method statements for each work discipline included in the Works.

C3.5.1.3 Construction Programme

The Contractor shall submit within the period stated in the Contract Data a suitable and realistic construction programme for the consideration of the Engineer/Principal Agent.

Please note that the penalty for delay specified in the Contract Data will be applicable to each phase.

The programme shall be in the form of a Gantt chart and shall include the following details:

- A work breakdown structure, identifying the major activity groups.
- For each activity group further details shall be provided with regard to the scheduled start and end dates of individual activities.
- The linkages between activities shall be clearly indicated and the logical network upon which the programme is based shall be separately submitted to the engineer if requested. Any constraints shall be classified as being time-related or resource-related.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- The critical path(s) shall be clearly indicated and floats on non-critical activities shall be shown.
- The Contractor shall indicate the working hours per day, night, week and month allowed for in the programme.
- Where relevant the Contractor shall state the production rates for key activities, e.g. earthworks, etc.

Together with the programme as detailed above the contractor shall submit to the engineer/principal agent a cash flow projection, indicating projected monthly invoice amounts. The cash flow projection shall be updated at monthly intervals to reflect actual payments to date and anticipated further payments.

The programme will be reviewed at the monthly site meetings at which the Contractor shall provide sufficient detail that will allow the comparison of completed work per activity that has fallen behind. The updated programme shall be submitted to the Engineer/Principal Agent at least two days prior to the monthly meetings.

If the programme has to be revised by reason of the Contractor falling behind his programme, he shall produce a revised programme showing how he intends to regain lost time in order to ensure completion of the Works within the time for completion or any granted extension of time. Any proposal to increase the tempo of work must be accompanied by positive steps to increase production by providing more labour and plant on site, or by using the available labour and plant in a more efficient manner.

Failure on the part of the Contractor to submit the programme or to work according to the programme or revised programmes shall be sufficient reason for the Engineer/Principal Agent to take steps as provided in the General Conditions of Contract.

The approval by the Engineer/Principal Agent of any programme shall have no contractual significance other than that the Engineer/Principal Agent will be satisfied that the work is carried out according to such programme and that the Contractor undertakes to carry out the work in accordance with the programme. It shall not limit the right of the Engineer/Principal Agent to instruct the Contractor to vary the programme if required by circumstances.

C3.5.1.4 Quality Assurance

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

The Contractor shall institute a quality assurance system and provide experienced personnel as well as all the necessary transport, instruments and equipment, to ensure adequate supervision and positive control of the works at all times in order to comply with the requirements. The Contractor shall deliver to the Engineer/Principal Agent, for his consideration, quality assurance programmes prior to the Contractor's appointment of any suppliers or commencement of the Works. Failure to comply with these requirements shall be just cause for the Engineer/Principal Agent to order supervision of the Works without additional remuneration or for him to recommend termination to the Employer in terms of the Conditions of Contract.

The Contractor shall do at least the quality control tests at the frequencies specified in the Scope of Works. If the scale of the works, construction methods or any other circumstances dictates, the Contractor shall do more tests when required for quality assurance purposes.

The Contractor shall keep systematic records of the test results and all worksheets relating thereto. All test results obtained by the Contractor in the course of his process control of the Works shall be submitted to the Engineer/Principal Agent or his Representative prior to requesting inspection of the relevant portions of the Works. Any request for inspection shall be submitted on the prescribed forms.

The employer is at liberty to carry out such tests as he deems necessary to determine compliance with the contract requirements and will make available the results of all tests to the contractor.

Acceptance control, record keeping and payment certificates shall be done in accordance with the Engineer's/Principal Agent's standard system except if the Engineer/Principal Agent approves that the Contractor's standard system may be used. An index to the Engineer's/Principal Agent's standard site administration forms is appended as Annexure A to section C3.5.

C3.5.1.5 Site Administration

- Daily Site Diary

The daily site diary in accordance with the pro forma appended in Annexure A to section C3.5 shall be kept up to date by the Contractor's Site Agent and will be signed on a daily basis by the Engineer's Representative.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- Information in Respect of Plant

Information relating to plant on Site shall be recorded in the daily site diary. In addition, the Contractor shall deliver to the Engineer/Principal Agent, on a monthly basis, a detailed summary of construction plant kept on the Site, full particulars given for each day of the month. Distinction shall be made between plant in working order and plant out-of-order. Such inventory shall be submitted by the first day of the month following the month to be reported.

- Information in Respect of Employees

Information relating to labour and management on Site shall be recorded in the daily site diary. In addition, the Contractor shall deliver to the Engineer/Principal Agent, on a monthly basis, a detailed summary of supervisory staff, labour employed (own and local labour) by category, and sub-contractors (both local and imported) for each day of the month. Such return shall be submitted by the first day of the month following the month to be reported.

- Rainfall Records

Rainfall records for the period of construction shall be taken on Site and recorded in the daily site diary. The Contractor shall provide and install all the necessary equipment for accurately measuring the rainfall. The Contractor shall also provide, erect and maintain a security fence plus gate, padlock and keys at each measuring station, all at his own cost. The Engineer/Principal Agent or his Representative shall take and record the daily rainfall readings. The Contractor shall be permitted to attend these readings, in the company of the Engineer's Representative. Access to the measuring gauge(s) shall at all times be under the Engineer's/Principal Agent's control.

C3.5.1.6 Site Instructions

Site instructions by the Engineer/Principal Agent, addressed to the Contractor at his office on the Site, will be numbered consecutively and will be deemed to have been received by the Contractor's Representative unless a break in the sequence of numbers is brought to the notice of the Engineer/Principal Agent in writing immediately.

C3.5.1.7 Site Meetings

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

The Contractor and his authorised representative shall attend all meetings held on the Site with the Employer and the professional team at dates and times to be determined by the Engineer/Principal agent. Such meetings will be held to evaluate the progress of the Contract, and to discuss matters pertaining to the Contract which any of the parties represented may wish to raise. It is not the intention to discuss day-to-day technical matters at such meetings.

C3.5.1.8 Payment Certificates

Refer to: C1.2.2 JBCC, Contract Data, B 15.0 Changes made to JBCC® documentation, clause 25.10.

All quantity calculations and certificates submitted by the Contractor for checking shall be in accordance with the standard JBCC prescribed format for Edition 6.2 (May 2018).

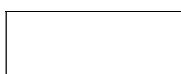
Where dayworks have been instructed by the Engineer/Principal Agent, the Contractor shall submit the returns to the Engineer/Principal for signature and approval within twenty-four (24) hours of the end of the working day on which the work was executed. Daywork returns shall be submitted on forms following the standard format included in Annexure A to Section C3.5 for this purpose. Failure to comply with the terms of this clause will result in non-payment for such dayworks.

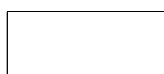
All costs for the preparation and submission of progress certificates shall be borne by the Contractor.

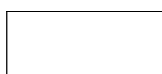
C3.5.1.9 Drawings, Operation and Maintenance Manuals

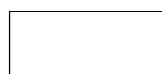
All information in the possession of the Contractor that is required by the Engineer's Representative in order to complete the As-Built drawings and to prepare a completion report for the Employer must be submitted to the Engineer's Representative before a Certificate of Practical Completion will be issued for the Works. Similarly, the Contractor will be required to submit full details of all pipes, valves, meters and specials in a suitable loose bound format, including any special operational and maintenance procedures related thereto, for incorporation in the overall operation and maintenance manual for the Scheme prior to the issue of a Certificate of Completion for the Works.

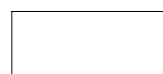
Only figured dimensions on the Drawings may be used in the interpretation thereof, and the Drawings shall not be scaled unless the Contractor is so instructed by the Engineer/Principal Agent in writing. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer in writing of

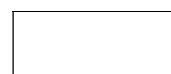

Contractor


Witness 1


Witness 2


Employer


Witness 1


Witness 2

any lack of information or conflict in the information on the Drawings. The Engineer/Principal Agent will upon written request provide any dimensions that may have been omitted from the Drawings.

C3.5.1.10 Record of Decision and Environmental Management Plan

The Contractor shall comply with all the conditions of the Record of Decision and the Environmental Management Plan appended as Annexure B and D respectively in Section C3.5

C3.5.1.11 Community Liaison and Community Relations

The Contractor shall appoint a Community Liaison Officer (CLO) from the local community after the person has been identified by the Ward Councillor and Ward Committee.

The Community Liaison Officer shall perform the following duties:

- Meet regularly with Ward Councillor, ward committee and the community;
- Attend and report at site meetings and PSC meetings;
- Coordinate community activities with construction works;
- Arrange special meetings;
- Interact with the Contractor daily
- Facilitate in resolving community disputes;
- Manage the labour desk:
 - Coordinate local labour matters,
 - Give feedback to the community on local labour matters,
 - Recruit local labour and local entrepreneurs,
 - Keep record of the wages and labour force,
 - Facilitate in resolving labour disputes.

The contract with the CLO shall make provision for payment by the Contractor to the CLO of a maximum amount calculated as follows:

Wage per Month = As per COGSTA minimum requirement

The contractor shall also be responsible for the payment of contributions to all statutory charges

Only one CLO shall be appointed per project, however, the functions of CLO and labour desk may be split between persons with the understanding that the remuneration will also be split.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

Should the Contractor experience any difficulty with community matters, these matters shall immediately be brought to the attention of the Engineer who shall arrange a meeting with the relevant Ward Councillor(s) and the CLO to resolve such matters.

In all dealings with communities through which the Works are to be executed, and in all dealings with workers employed from within such communities, the Contractor shall take due cognisance of the character, culture and circumstances of the specific community, and shall at all times use his best endeavours to avoid the development of disputes and rather to foster a spirit of co-operation and harmony towards the project.

The Contractor shall at all times, keep the Engineer/Principal Agent fully informed regarding all matters affecting or negotiated between the Contractor and the community, and he shall attend all liaison meetings as may be arranged by the Engineer/Principal Agent and/or the Employer. All matters concerning the community shall be discussed and where possible, resolved at such meetings.

Where any resolution during such negotiations or at such meetings shall be contrary to the terms and provisions of the Contract, the Contractor shall not give effect thereto without a prior written instruction from the Engineer/Principal Agent. Where the Contractor is of the opinion that any instruction of the Engineer/Principal Agent issued in terms of this clause will result in the incurring of additional costs which were not provided for in his tendered rates and prices and/or that a delay in the progress of the Works will result, he shall be entitled to submit a claim in terms of the Contract.

C3.5.1.12 Features requiring special attention

- **Built-up Areas**

The Contractor's attention is drawn to the fact that the Works will be constructed inside built-up areas. The Contractor shall exercise all necessary precautions and take all necessary steps to ensure the safety and convenience of the public. In addition, the Contractor shall provide access for traffic over and through the works, and for residents to their places of abode, all as described in the Scope of Work. Allowance must be made by the Contractor in his programming for delays resulting from the aforesaid.

The Contractor shall give the Employer a minimum of 4 days written notice of his intent to close access to residential stands. No traffic access to a residential stand shall be closed for longer than 48 hours.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

- **Care of the Site**

At all times during construction of the Works and upon completion thereof, the Site of the Works shall be kept and left in a clean and orderly condition. The Contractor shall store all materials and equipment for which he is responsible in an orderly manner, and shall keep the Site free from debris and obstructions.

- **Control of Water**

The Contractor shall at all times and in all respects be responsible for the handling of stormwater from higher-laying areas above the Works, and for the handling of any sub-surface water that may affect the Works. No separate payment shall be made in this regard, as all costs related thereto shall be deemed to be included in the rates tendered for the various items of work that are included in the Bill of Quantities.

- **Survey and Setting Out**

The Engineer/Principal Agent has established survey beacons on site from which the Contractor can set out the Works. The position and co-ordinates of the permanent survey beacons have been shown on the drawings. The Contractor shall be responsible for the protection of all these survey beacons and reference points from handing over of the beacons to the Contractor to completion of the Works. Property beacons and trigonometrical survey beacons that are disturbed or destroyed during the course of the contract shall be replaced at the Contractor's cost by a registered land surveyor who shall verify such replacement.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the true and proper setting out of the Works and for the correctness of the position, levels, dimensions and alignment of all parts of the Works from the beacons established above and for the provision of all necessary instruments, appliances and labour in connection therewith. Such setting out shall be executed by a qualified surveyor. No separate payment shall be made in respect of setting out, such work being deemed as included in the rates tendered for construction of the Works.

The checking of any setting-out or of any line or level by the Engineer/Principal Agent shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility for the correctness thereof.

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

If at any time during the progress of the Works, any error shall appear or arise in the position, levels, dimensions or alignment of any part of the Works, the Contractor, on being required to do so by the Engineer/Principal Agent, shall at his own expense rectify such error to the satisfaction of the Engineer/Principal Agent, but if such error is based on incorrect data supplied in writing by the Engineer/Principal Agent shall, in respect of cost of such rectification, be entitled to make a claim in accordance with the Contract Data.

C3.5.1.13 NOTICES, SIGNS, BARRICADES AND ADVERTISEMENTS

A notice board according to Dwg 2334.11.ZA.01.A003 shall be installed by the contractor.

Before the contractor has the sign board printed, the contractor shall obtain prior approval from the Principal Agent/engineer with regards to the layout.

Notices, signs and barricades as well as advertisements may only be erected where approved by the Engineer/Principal Agent. The Contractor shall be responsible for their supply, erection, maintenance and ultimate removal and shall make provision for this in his tendered rates.

The Engineer/Principal Agent shall have the right to have any sign, notice or advertisement moved to another location, or to have it removed from the Site of the Works, should it in any way prove to be unsatisfactory, inconvenient or dangerous to the general public.

END OF SECTION

Contractor	Witness 1	Witness 2	Employer	Witness 1	Witness 2

INDEX TO SITE FORMS

Item No.	Form No.	Form Description	Date created	Date Last Modified
1		Site Records		
	E4F0101	Site Diary Cover		2018/08/21
	E4F0102	Site Diary		2018/09/12
	E4F0103	Site Diary: Additional Information / Comments		2018/05/01
	E4F0104	Site Instructions		2018/04/25
	E4F0105	Rainfall Calculations		2018/05/04
	E4F0106	Re-instatement of Fences		2018/05/11
	E4F0107	Existing Building Status Report		2018/05/11
	E4F0108	Report by LDO		2018/05/11
	E4F0109	Report by CLO		2018/05/11
	E4F0110	Visitor sign in book		2018/05/11
		Site Meeting Agendas		
	E2AM0203	Master - Pre-site Hand Over	20/02/2006	2018/04/05
	E2AM0204	Master - Site Meeting	20/02/2006	2018/04/05
	E2AM0206	Master - Site Hand Over	20/02/2006	2018/04/05
	E2AM0207	Master - Site Inspection	22/07/2008	2018/04/05
2		Financial		
	E4F0201	Payment Certificate submission information		2018/03/19
	E4F0202	Engineer's Certificate EC1 – EC11 : EC1 – Engineer's Certificate EC2 – Monthly Financial Contract Progress Report EC 3 – Contract Price Adjustment EC 4 - Penalty Calculation EC 6 - Materials on Site EC 6.1- Cession of Ownership Rights (material delivered to site) EC 7 – Contract information EC 8 – Payments to date EC 9 – Final Summary of Schedules EC 10 – Summary of Variation Orders EC 11 – Completion Estimate EC 12 – Cessionary Payments	2007/10/30	2018/08/21
	E4F0203	Cession of Ownership Rights	2009/09/29	2018/03/19
	E4F0204	Cession Agreement	2009/09/29	2018/03/19
	E4F0205	Deed of Cession - Materials		2018/03/19
	E4F0206	<i>For future use</i>		
	E4F0207	Variation Order	2009/07/03	2018/03/19
	E4F0208	<i>For future use</i>		
	E4F0209	<i>For future use</i>		
	E4F0210	Daywork Summary		2018/03/19
	E4F0211	Daywork Return		2018/03/19
	E4F0212	QS Requisition Bill of Quantities		2018/03/19
	E4F0213	QS Requisition Estimate		2018/03/19
	E4F0214	Measurements Calculation Sheet		2018/08/31
	E4F0215	Engineer's Facilities		2018/08/31
	E4F0216	Cash flow		2018/08/31

Item No.	Form No.	Form Description	Date created	Date Last Modified
	E4F0217	<i>For future use</i>		
3		Quality Control		
3.1		General		
	E4F030101	ER's Quality Control Plan		2018/07/02
	E4F030102	Inspection Request Sheet		2018/07/02
	E4F030103	Blasting Checklist		2018/07/02
	E4F030104	Inspection Request – Water – Erf Connections		2018/07/09
	E4F030105	Inspection Request – Sewer – Erf Connections		2018/07/09
3.2		Concrete		
	E4F030201	Excavation to Structures		2018/07/02
	E4F030202	Req for checking prior to pouring of Concrete		2018/03/19
	E4F030203	Pre-Concrete Inspection Checklist		2018/03/19
	E4F030204	Post Concrete Inspection Report for Civil Works		2018/03/19
	E4F030205	Backfill to Structures : Checklist		2018/03/19
	E4F030206	Concrete Cube Test Report		2018/03/19
	E4F030207	Req for checking prior to pouring concrete (Building)		2018/03/19
	E4F030208	Reinforced Concrete – Inspection request	2010/09/06	2018/03/19
3.3		Roads		
	E4F030301	Requisition for checking Earthworks up to Base Course		2018/07/02
	E4F030302	Requisition to evaluate Asphalt Premix		2018/07/02
	E4F030303	Evaluation of Road Levels		2018/07/02
	E4F030304	Req for checking Road Signs & Traffic Marking		2018/07/02
	E4F030305	Requisition for Approval of Prime		2018/07/02
	E4F030306	<i>For future use</i>		
3.4		Stormwater		
	E4F030401	Requisition for checking earthworks : Stormwater		2018/07/02
	E4F030402	Requisition for checking pipelines, culverts, kerb inlets, junction boxes		2018/07/02
	E4F030403	Requisition for checking kerbs and channels		2018/07/02
3.5		Sewers		
	E4F030501	Requisition for checking earthworks : Sewers		2018/07/02
	E4F030502	Requisition for checking the laying of sewer pipes		2018/07/02
	E4F030503	Requisition for air testing sewers		2018/07/02
	E4F030504	Inspection Request – Pipework – Sewer		2018/07/02
	E4F030505	Manhole Water Tightness Test Form		2018/07/14
3.6		Water		
	E4F030601	Requisition for checking earthworks		2018/07/06
	E4F030602	Requisition for checking pipelines, valve chambers, fire hydrants, pipeline markers, yard connections		2018/07/06
	E4F030603	Requisition for hydraulic testing of water pipes		2018/07/06
	E4F030604	Commissioning test sheet – Centrifugal Pumps	2008/08/14	2018/05/30
	E4F030605	Req for checking steel pipes prior to installation	2009/08/12	2018/07/06
	E4F030606	Inspection Request – Pipework – Water		2018/07/06
	E4F030607	Commissioning Test Sheet Borehole Pumps	2009/09/15	2018/07/06
	E4F030608	Req for checking pipe laying blanket	2018/04/01	2018/05/28
	E4F030609	Req for steel pipe welding activity checklist	2018/04/01	2018/05/28
	E4F030610	Req for checking steel pipes prior to installation	2018/04/01	2018/05/28

Item No.	Form No.	Form Description	Date created	Date Last Modified
	E4F030611	NDT Requisition Sheet	2018/04/01	2018/05/28
	E4F030612	Req for checking pipe excavation bedding	2018/04/01	2018/05/28
	E4F030613	Steel pipe external coating repair report	2018/04/01	2018/05/28
3.7		Electrical		
	E4F030701	Requisition for Checking of Electrical: Street Light Reticulation	2007/10/30	2018/03/19
	E4F030702	Requisition for Checking of Electrical: LV Reticulation	2007/10/30	2018/03/19
	E4F030703	Requisition for Checking of Electrical: MV Lines	2007/10/31	2018/03/19
	E4F030704	Requisition for Checking of Electrical: Transformers	2007/10/31	2018/03/19
	E4F030705	Requisition for Checking of Electrical: Service connections & SPU/LPU	2007/10/31	2018/03/19
	E4F030706	Requisition for Checking of Electrical: Overhead line switching equipment	2007/10/31	2018/03/19
	E4F030707	Requisition for Checking of Electrical: LV Feeders	2007/10/31	2018/03/19
	E4F030708	Technical Data Project Sheet	2007/10/31	2018/03/19
	E4F030709	Miniature substation checklist	2007/11/21	2018/03/19
3.8		Structures		
	E4F030701	House Structures Checklist	2010/05	2018/07/06
	E4F030702	Structural Steel – Inspection request	2010/09/06	2018/07/06
	E4F030703	Pile Foundations – Confirmation of Inspection	2010/09/06	2018/07/06
	E4F030704	Inspection form checklist (Rural): Top Structures	2010/11/16	2018/07/06
	E4F030705	Inspection form checklist (Rural): Approval to pour slab	2010/11/16	2018/07/06
	E4F030706	Inspection form checklist (Rural): Roof & Completions	2010/11/16	2018/07/06
	E4F030707	Final Retention Inspection (Rural).doc	2011/04/21	2018/07/06
	E4F030708	Inspection Form Check list (Rural) Rainwater.docx	2012/06/05	2018/07/06
	E4F030709	Beneficiary Removal & Relocation	2013/02/11	2018/07/06
	E4F030710	House Demolition form	2013/02/11	2018/07/06
	E4F030711	Platform Cutting check list	2013/04/22	2018/07/06
		General Forms		
	E4F0401	Certificate of Practical Completion (GCC 1990)		2018/08/31
	E4F0402	Certificate of Completion (GCC 1990)		2018/08/31
	E4F0403	Certificate of Final Approval (GCC1990)		2018/08/31
	E4F0404	Certificate of Completion (GCC 2004)		2018/08/31
	E4F0405	Certificate of Final Approval (General GCC 2004)		2018/08/31
	E4F0406	Certificate of Final Approval – Mechanical		2018/08/31
	E4F0407	Certificate of Practical Completion – Mechanical		2018/08/31
	E4F0408	Internal Audit Requirements on Site		2018/03/20
	E4F0409	Certificate of Practical Completion (GCC 2004)		2018/08/31
	E4F0410	Snag List		2018/08/31
	E4F0411	Certificate of Performance (FIDIC)		2018/08/31
	E4F0412	Taking Over Certificate (FIDIC)		2018/08/31
	E4F0413	NEC Certificate of Completion		2018/08/31
	E4F0414	NEC Certificate of Completion – 2nd Edition		2018/08/31

Item No.	Form No.	Form Description	Date created	Date Last Modified
	E4F0415	NEC Defects Certificate		2018/08/31
	E4F0416	NEC Defects Certificate – 2nd Edition		2018/08/31
	E4F0417	Site File System		2018/03/19
	E4F0418	Certificate of Practical Completion – GCC 2010	2013/02/26	2018/08/31
	E4F0419	Certificate of Completion – GCC 2010	2013/02/26	2018/08/31
	E4F0420	Certificate of Final Approval (GCC2010)	2014/02/10	2018/08/31
	E4F0421	Certificate of Practical Completion (GCC2015)	2018/05/02	2018/05/02
	E4F0422	Certificate of Completion (GCC2015)	2018/05/02	2018/05/02
	E4F0423	Cert of Final Approval	2018/05/02	2018/05/02



DEPARTMENT OF TOURISM,
ENVIRONMENT AND CONSERVATION

ISEBE LEZOKHENKETHO, INDALO
NOLONDOLOZO

LEFAPHA LA BOJANALA, TIKOLOGO
LE TSHOMARELO

DEPARTEMENT VAN TOERISME,
OMGEWING EN BEWARING

224 Du Toitspan Road
Private Bag X6102
KIMBERLEY
8300

224 Du Toitspan Road
Kgatsanaposo X6102
KIMBERLEY
8300

224 Du Toitspan Road
Inqowa yeposi X6102
KIMBERLEY
8300

Du Toitspanweg 224
Privaatsak X6102
KIMBERLEY
8300

Tel. (053) 807-4800

Fax (053) 831-3630

Enquiries :
Dipatlisiso : S.G Mbanjwa
Imibuzo :
Navrae :

Date :
Lelha : 03 July 2006
Umhla :
Datum :

Reference :
Tshupelo : NNO 25/19
Isalathiso : NC/KIM 39/155/2005
Verwysings :

Sol-Plaatje Local Municipality
Mr. de Bruyn
C/o 3 Lodge Road
Kimberley
8300

Fax 053-832 6518

Dear: Mr. G. de Bruyn

APPLICATION FOR AUTHORIZATION: THE CHANGE OF LAND USE FROM AGRICULTURAL OR UNDERTERMINED USE TO ANY OTHER LAND USE: UPGRADING OF THE LERATO PARK FROM INFORMAL SETTLEMENT TO FORMAL INTERGRATED SETTLEMENT, SOL-PLAATJE MUNICIPALITY, NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCE.

By virtue of the powers delegated to me in terms of Section 33(1) of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act No. 73 of 1989), I hereby in terms of Section 22(3) of the Act authorize: **Application for Authorization: THE CHANGE OF LAND USE FROM AGRICULTURAL OR UNDERTERMINED USE TO ANY OTHER LAND USE: UPGRADING OF THE LERATO PARK FROM INFORMAL SETTLEMENT TO FORMAL INTERGRATED SETTLEMENT, SOL-PLAATJE MUNICIPALITY, NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCE.** Schedule 1/2 of Government Notice No. R. 1182: activity 2 (c): a detailed description of the activity is given in the final **scoping report** dated (MAY 2006), subject to the conditions listed in the record of decision.

The record of decision including the conditions under which the application is authorized is attached. This authorization is valid for a period of (3) years from the date of issue and if the activity is not undertaken within this period the authorization will be invalidated.

An appeal against this authorization or conditions of authorization may be lodged in writing with: The Member of the Executive Council, Ministry of Tourism, Environment & Conservation, Private Bag X6102, Kimberley 8300, Fax. (053) 8321026, within 30 calendar days from the date of issue of this authorization, setting the grounds of appeal and including all relevant documentation as required by Section 35 of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act No. 73 of 1989).

Yours Faithfully

Mrs. P. M. N. Mokhall

HOD: DEPARTMENT OF TOURISM, ENVIRONMENT AND CONSERVATION

Date: 06.07.04

Permit No 81/2006



A DESTINATION IN HARMONY WITH NATURE

Northern Cape Province
DEPARTMENT OF TOURISM,
ENVIRONMENT &
CONSERVATION



Porofensi Ya Kapa Bokone
LEFAPHA LA BOJANALA,
TIKOLOGO LE
SHOMARELO

RECORD OF DECISION

In terms of Section 22(3) of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act No 73 of 1989) with regard to the undertaking of the activity described below as required by Government Notice No R. 1183 of 5 September 1997

Reference number: NC/KIM39/155/05

Permit number:
81/2006

Project title:	The change of land use from : agricultural or undetermined use to any other land use : <u>Upgrading of Lerato Park from informal to formal Integrated settlement</u>				
Brief description of project:	The development will consist of the following: • A full formal integrated settlement				
Project location:	KIMBERLEY, NORTHERN CAPE				
Co-ordinates:	Latitude:	28°	40'	50"	So
	Longitude:	24°	42'	40"	Ea
District Municipality	Frances Baard Local Municipality				
Local authority/municipality:	Sol Plaatje District Municipality				
Name of Property:	Remainder of portion 59 of farm Roodepaan 70				
Farm/Erven Name and Number	As above				
Size of Property:	200 ha				
Closest City/Town:	In Kimberley	Distance (in km)	-		
Project Applicant:	Sol Plaatje Municipality				
Business Reg. No./ID No.	NC091				
Contact person:	MR G de Bruyn				
Postal Address:	C/o 3 Lodge Road, KIMBERLEY				
Telephone:	053 832 6518	Cell:	082 822 8201		
Email:		Fax:	053-832 6518		
Environmental Consultant(s):	B H Erasmus				

				Mr B H Erasmus	
				7 Edgar Davis Str, Kimberley	
				053 832 6518	Cell: 082 822
				—	Fax: 053 832 6518
Site visit	Yes	X	No		Date of site visit
Persons present: D Moleko, B H Erasmus					

DECISION

After due consideration of the facts presented to the Northern Cape Department of Tourism, Environment & Conservation (hereafter referred to as the Department), authorization is hereby granted in terms of Section 22(3) of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act No 73 of 1989) **the proposed upgrade of Lerato Park from informal to integrated formal settlement** (Schedule 1 of Government Notice No R.1182: *Activity 2(c) A change of undetermined use to any other land use*. The authorization is granted subject to the following condition

CONDITIONS

General conditions:

1. This authorization is granted only in terms of Section 22(3) of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act No 73 of 1989) and does not exempt the holder thereof from compliance with any other legislation.
2. This authorization refers only to the project as specified and described in the final scoping report dated **MAY 2006**. Any other activity listed under Section 21 of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act No 73 of 1989) which is not specified above, is not covered by this authorization and a separate application will have to be launched and must therefore comply with the requirements of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act No 73 of 1989) and Government Notice No. R. 1183 of 5 September 1997 and its amendments.
3. **This authorization is subject to the approval by the relevant local authorities i.e. in terms of any relevant legislation administered by those authorities.**
4. No development may take place on the area of concern without the necessary permits/approvals and/or service agreements, where it is relevant, from or between the following authorities, including:
 - National Department of Environmental Affairs & Tourism
 - National Department of Agriculture
 - Department of Housing & Local Government
 - Department of Water Affairs & Forestry.
 - Department of Minerals & Energy
 - Department of Transport, Roads & Public Works
 - McGregor Museum
 - South African Heritage Resources Agency
 - Civil Aviation Authority, and
 - Any other relevant authority whether national, provincial or local

5. The applicant shall within 5 (five) days of receipt of this authorization, provide all interested and affected parties identified during the public consultation process, with copies of this authorization, including all the conditions attached thereto.
6. One week written notice must be given to the Department before commencement with construction activities.
 - 6.1 Such notice shall make clear reference to the site location details and the reference number given above.
 - 6.2 The notice must include proof of compliance with the following conditions described herein:
i.e. conditions: 5 & 14
7. All mitigation measures and recommendations as laid down in the Scoping Report are binding and must be implemented, unless stated differently in this ROD.
8. The Environmental Control Officer must ensure that changes in the project resulting in significant environmental impacts and that differ from what was authorized by the Department, must be submitted to this Department for approval prior to such changes being effected.
9. The applicant must notify this Department, in writing, within 24 hours thereof if conditions of the authorization are not complied with.
10. Non-compliance with, or any deviation from, the conditions set out in this authorization constitutes a failure in compliance with the authorization. Such failure in compliance is regarded as an offence and will be dealt with in terms of Sections 29, 30 and 31 of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act No. 73 of 1989), as well as any other appropriate legal mechanisms.
11. The Department must be notified of any change of address of the applicant.
12. The Environmental Management Plan (EMP) for construction and management of activities relating to the protection of the natural environment during the construction phase and must be adhered to at all times unless stated differently in this ROD.
13. An Environmental Control Officer (ECO) must be appointed to oversee the implementation of the EMP. The ECO or his representative must visit the site at least once a week for the duration of the construction phase.
14. The conditions of the authorization should be brought to the attention of all persons (employees, sub-consultants, etc) associated with the undertaking of this activity and the applicant should take such measures necessary to bind such persons to these conditions.
15. A copy of the authorization shall be available on site during construction. The applicable conditions of this authorization must form part of all contractors' and sub-contractors' conditions of contract.
16. The applicant must apply the principle of best practicable environmental option for all technologies used/ implemented during construction.
17. Appropriate toilets must be supplied for the entire construction period and must be serviced on a regular basis.
18. All waste including general litter must be removed from site and disposed off at an applicable licensed disposal site. No waste material shall be left on site.
19. No fires are permitted on site.
20. No plants must be removed other than required for the layout of the site. However, if the affected plant(s) is endangered or protected, permission must be sought from Northern Cape Department of Tourism, Environment & Conservation for the removal thereof.
21. All forms of pollution must be prevented, or where it cannot, should be minimized or remedied.

22. Records relating to the compliance/non-compliance with the conditions of the authorization must be kept in good order. Such records must be made available to the Department within 7 (seven) days of receipt of a written request by the Department for such records and also included in the Environmental Audit report.
23. Any complaints regarding the said development must be brought to the attention of the Department within 24 working hours after receiving the complaint. A complaints register must be kept up to date for inspection by the Department.
24. This Department may add to, change and/or amend any of the conditions in this authorization if, in the opinion of the department, the addition, change of amendment is environmentally justified. In event that such Impacts exceed its significance as predicted in the independent consultant's environmental scoping report and supporting documentation, the authorization may be withdrawn after proper procedures were followed.
25. In the event of any dispute concerning the significance of a particular impact, the opinion of this department in respect of its significance will prevail.
26. The Department must be notified, within 30 days thereof, of any change of ownership and/or project developer. Conditions imposed in this ROD must be made known to the new owner and/ or developer and are binding on the new owner and/or developer.
27. In the event of sharing the Conditions imposed in this ROD must be made known to the sharing party. All conditions in this ROD are binding on the sharing party. The applicant is responsible to ensure that all these conditions are complied with.
28. National government, provincial government, local authorities or committees appointed in terms of the conditions of this application or any other public authority or organization shall not be held responsible for any damage or losses suffered by the applicant or his successor in title in any instance where construction or operation subsequent to construction be temporarily or permanently stopped for reasons of non-compliance by the applicant with the conditions of approval as set out in this document or any other subsequent document emanating from these conditions of approval.
29. If any condition imposed in terms of this authorization is not being complied with, the authorization may be withdrawn after 30 days written notice to the applicant in terms of Section 22 (4).
30. The applicant shall be responsible for all costs necessary to comply with the above conditions unless otherwise specified.
31. In the event that any archaeological material is found and it is likely that it will be disturbed, the Department must be alerted immediately.
32. The Department must be supplied with an approval from the landowner giving consent for the applicant to proceed with the project, before construction/upgrading takes place.

Special conditions:

1. All mitigation measures and recommendations as laid down in the Scoping Report by **B H ERASMUS dated MAY 2006** are binding and must be implemented, unless stated differently in this ROD.
2. The measures outlined in the Geo-technical report to favorably design the houses to meet the required conditions, specific to Lerato Park must be adhered to
3. The Environmental Management Plan Report as submitted by **B H ERASMUS** on the **23rd MAY 2006** must be implemented to the latter, throughout the pre and post development phases of Lerato Park

KEY FACTORS AFFECTING THE DECISION

The Department's authorization is based upon a review of the final scoping report and appendices dated **MAY 2006**. The Scoping Report findings, given the nature of the projects and the selected sites and study area, concludes that the potential impacts associated with the proposed development are of a nature and extent that can be reduced, limited and eliminated by the introduction of appropriate mitigation measures. The conditions of the ROD and the recommendations made in the final scoping report and appendices dated **MAY 2006** should be sufficient to mitigate and manage the impacts associated with the development.

The legal and procedural requirements have been complied with and the information contained in the Scoping Report and appendices is to the satisfaction of the Department.

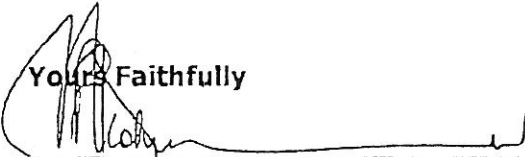
PERIOD OF VALIDITY AND RENEWAL OF AUTHORIZATION

This authorization is valid for 3 (three) years from the date of issue and must be renewed 6 (six) months prior to the expiry date. The Department reserves the right to review and amend the conditions of the authorization at any given time.

APPEAL

The applicant must, within 5 calendar days of receipt of this record of decision (ROD) inform all interested and affected parties registered during the EIA process of at least the following:

- i. That an authorization has been issued to the applicant to proceed with the construction and operation of the facilities.
- ii. That any appeal in terms of the Section 10 (1) of regulation 11 of the environmental assessment regulations (Government Notice No R. 1183 of 5 September 1997) against the issuing of the authorization must be lodged with the MEC for Tourism, Environment & Conservation within 30 (thirty) days from the date on which the ROD has been issued to the applicant and at the address stipulated in the authorization.
- iii. Include the date on which the ROD was issued to the applicant in terms of regulation 10 (1) and the date by which the appeals must reach the MEC.
- iv. Indicate where copies of the authorization and ROD can be viewed/obtained


Yours Faithfully

Mrs. P. M. N. Mokhali: HOD
Department of Tourism, Environment and Conservation

Date: 06. 07. 04

Office

SOL PLAATJE MUNICIPALITY

Upgrading of the Lerato Park informal settlement,
Kimberley

Environmental Management Plan

May 2006

RECEIVED
23 MAY 2006

Compiled by Hennie Erasmus
Environmental consultant

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION ONE: INTRODUCTION

1.1	Background	1
1.2	Terms of Reference	1
1.3	Environmental Consultant	1
1.4	Presentation of the EMP	1

SECTION TWO: THE PROPOSED DEVELOPMENT

2.1	Site Context	3
-----	--------------	---

2.2	Components of the Development	3
-----	-------------------------------	---

2.3	Infrastructure	3
-----	----------------	---

2.4	The Construction Phase	3
-----	------------------------	---

2.5	Operational phase	3
-----	-------------------	---

2.6	Decommissioning phase	4
-----	-----------------------	---

SECTION THREE: COMMITMENT TO THE EMP

5

SECTION FOUR: ENVIRONMENTAL POLICY

4.1	Introduction	6
-----	--------------	---

4.2	Environmental Legislation	
-----	---------------------------	--

4.3	Sol Plate's Environmental Policy	6
-----	----------------------------------	---

SECTION FIVE: PROJECT TEAM AND ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE

5.1	The project team	7
-----	------------------	---

5.2	Organisational Structure	7
-----	--------------------------	---

	i. Project Manager and Implementation agent	7
	ii. Environmental Control Officer	7

SECTION SIX: ENVIRONMENTAL AWARENESS MEETING

9

SECTION SEVEN: REQUIRED PROCEDURES FOR CONSTRUCTION

7.1	Establishment of Access Roads	10
7.2	Site Establishment	10
	i. Location of Contractor's camp	10
	ii. Site facilities required	10
	iii. Storage facilities and working area	11
	iv. Site encampment	11
	v. Temporary offices	11
	vi. Sanitary facilities	11
7.3	Demolition of Existing Structures	11
7.4	Site clearing	12
	i. Clearing of vegetation	12
	ii. Soil stripping	12
7.5	Cut and Fill Bulk Earthworks	12
	i. Soil handling	12
	ii. Soil stockpile management	12
	iii. Potential discovery of sites	13
	with archaeological significance	13
	iv. Drilling and blasting	13
	v. Pre-blasting notification surveys	13
7.6	Establishment of Infra structural Services	14
	i. Trenching records	14
7.7	Building Activities	14
	i. Concrete mixing	14
	ii. Construction of buildings	15
7.8	Roadworks and Parking Areas	15
	i. Creation of Platforms	15
7.9	Site Clean-up and Rehabilitation	15

SECTION EIGHT: GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR ALL CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES

16	8.1	Method Statements
16	8.2	Dust Control
16	8.3	Noise Control
17	8.4	Fuel and Hazardous Material Storage
17	i. Inventory of Substances	
17	ii. General Precautions	
17	iii. Fuels	
18	iv. Equipment/Machinery	
18	8.5	Refuse and disposal
19	8.6	Demarcation of Eating Areas
19	8.7	Provision of Water
19	8.8	Electrical Power
19	8.9	Storm water Control
19	9.10	Discharge of Surface Water
19	9.11	Cleanliness of Public Roads
20	8.12	Traffic Control and Safety
20	8.13	Emergency Procedures
20	i. Fire emergency procedure	
20	ii. First aid	
20	iii. Spills of fuels and hazardous substances	
21	iv. Emergency advisory procedure	
21	8.14	Fire precautions
21	i. Cooking/heating	
21	ii. Smoking	
21	iii. Welding/cutting	
21	iv. Fire-fighting equipment	

SECTION TEN: INTERNAL REVIEW 26

LIST OF FIGURES 27

9.3	Non-conformance and corrective action	25
9.2	Records	24
9.1	Monitoring	24
i.	Project Manager and Implementing agent –	24
ii.	Log of daily activities	24
ii.	Environmental Control officer –	25
	Environmental issues	25

SECTION NINE: PROCEDURES FOR MONITORING, RECORDS AND CORRECTIVE ACTION

8.15	Security	22
i.	Security cards	22
ii.	Weapons and dangerous articles	22
iii.	Safety on site	22
8.16	Employment	23
8.17	On-going public participation	23

Section One

Introduction

1.1 BACKGROUND

The EMP contains the specifications of the various contractors' contents to which they will have to adhere to during the site works.

1.2 TERMS OF REFERENCE

The terms of reference for this EMP were to document guidelines, which would govern the construction and operational phase of the proposed development.

The ecological knowledge and managerial skills of the proposed Environmental Control Officer will be utilised to achieve results for the project that satisfies the requests of the Interested and Affected Parties, with the ecological damage being limited to an absolute minimum.

1.3 ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANT

This EMP was compiled by Hennie Erasmus (Environmental Consultant).

Further independent reports will be attached as they become available eg. Water, sewage, electricity, waste removal, etc. A geo-technical report has already been done. The environmental consultant did not recommend any other specialist reports on the environment because of the extreme degradation of the ecology of the area for the proposed development.

1.4 PRESENTATION OF THE EMP

The purpose of an EMP is to specify procedures to mitigate the potential negative impacts of all work on the physical, biological and social environments on and around the site. The EMP is structured as follows:

SECTION

DESCRIPTION

Section One	Explains the background and terms of reference for the EMP
Section Two	Provides a summary of the development proposals
Section Three	Explains the contractual obligations with regard to the EMP
Section Four	Provides overall guidance on addressing environmental impacts within the scope of environmental legislation and recommendations contained in the EIA, where applicable

Identifies the responsibility and authority of the various organisations involved in the project	Section Five
Describes the method of communicating the EMP to the Contractors	Section Six
Describes the procedures for controlling activities in site to minimise adverse effects on the environment	Section Seven
Specifies the procedures for monitoring and recording compliance with the EMP, and implementing and recording corrective actions	Section Eight
Specifies the procedure for reviewing compliance with the EMP and for making changes to the EMP during the construction period.	Section Nine

Section Two

The Proposed development

2.1 SITE CONTEXT

Figure 1 indicates the site of the planned development in Lerato Park, Kimberley.

2.2 COMPONENTS OF THE DEVELOPMENT

The layout of the development is indicated in Figure 2. Houses are planned in clusters around a central island in the centre.

The different components of the development are:

Approximately 3850 houses
One Primary school per 1000 residential units
One secondary school per 3000 residential units.
Road construction
Storm water drainage
Required number of churches through community participation
Clinic
Police station
Shopping centre(s)

2.3 INFRASTRUCTURE

There are presently 1 800 informal shacks in the area, most of them closer to the Barkley Road area than towards Rooderpan. The planning is that the northern section be formalised first so as not to disrupt the present informal settlement and then move the inhabitants to the formal settlement. Thereafter the present informal settlement area will be formalised.

Municipal services for water supply, storm water drainage, electricity, sewage and refuse removal will have to be put in place.

2.4 THE CONSTRUCTION PHASE

The construction phase will last approximately three years.

2.5 OPERATIONAL PHASE

The operational phase will last indefinitely as this will be a formalised suburb of Kimberley.

2.6 DECOMMISSIONING PHASE

Not applicable.

Section Three

Commitment to the EMP

The Environmental Management Plan (EMP) defines and specifies procedures, which the contractors must follow for the purpose of eliminating or reducing adverse environmental impacts for the construction works in the site and the surrounding area.

The EMP must be included with the tender documents to ensure that the costs of implementing the EMP are included into the contract costs and also to insure that contractors are aware of their environmental responsibilities prior to commencing work. Other implementing agents and/or contractors already on site must be handed the EMP for implementation.

The EMP thus forms part of the contract. Failure by any of the contractors' or sub-contractors' employees to implement the EMP, will be considered cause for the Project Manager and Implementing agent/Environmental Control Officer (ECO) to recommend that offending employees be removed from site, penalties be instated or that the damage be repaired at the cost of the contractors. The Project Manager/Implementing agent may also order the removal of equipment that is causing continual environmental damage (e.g. leaking oil or diesel).

The Project Manager/Implementing agent may order the contractors to suspend part or all of the works if they fail to comply with the specifications set out in the EMP and the method statements supplied by the contractors and sub-contractors. The suspension will be enforced until such time as the offending party(ies) procedure or equipment is corrected. No extension of time will be granted on the contract period for such delays and costs will be borne by the contractors.

In case of contractors/sub-contractors that did not receive the EMP as part of their tender procedures, the same procedure of environmental awareness training must be supplied during induction training by the ECO and the same principles will apply to a tenderer that received the EMP with the time of tender.

Copies of the EMP will be available at the Sol Plaatje Municipality and Hennie Erasmus (Environmental Consultant), and with the Project Manager/Implementing agent on site. All senior personnel on the contract will be required to familiarise themselves with the content of the EMP and to ensure that their employees act in such a way that the environment is protected according to its provisions.

Section Four Environmental Policy

4.1 INTRODUCTION

The environmental policy establishes the overall sense of direction for the project and is formulated to guide the EIMP. The policy is guided by an assessment of the potential environmental impacts of the activities to be conducted and environmental legislation. This section outlines key pieces of relevant environmental legislation and provides the environmental policy statement for the project.

4.2 ENVIRONMENTAL LEGISLATION

Atmospheric Pollution Prevention Act No. 45 of 1965
 Environment Conservation Act No. 73 of 1989
 Hazardous Substances Act No. 15 of 1973
 National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998
 National Monuments Act No. 28 of 1969
 National Water Act No. 36 of 1998
 Northern Cape Nature Conservation Ordinance 19 of 1974
 National Act on Forests, No. 84 of 1998

4.3 SOL PLATJIE MUNICIPALITY'S ENVIRONMENTAL POLICY

The following environmental policy statements have been prepared for the construction works associated with the Lerato Park upgrading. All personnel working in this project commit themselves to:

- Adhering to the requirements of the Environmental Management Plan for the project;
- Managing their activities so as to minimise the nuisance and disruption to the humans in the area;
- Managing their activities so as to minimise the risk of pollution of the air, soil, groundwater and surface water;
- Adhering to environmental legislation relevant to the location and nature of the work being conducted; and
- Documenting compliance with the Environmental Management Plan to ensure it's accountable and transparent implementation.
- Attend induction training in environmental awareness in general.
- Report any archaeological findings to the Project Manager and/or the ECO.

Section Five

Project Team and Organisational Structure

5.1 THE PROJECT TEAM

The following consultants have been appointed for the project:

FUNCTION	CONSULTANT
Geo-technical survey	Simlab (Pty) Ltd.
Implementing agent	Sol Plaatje Municipality
Environmental Impact Assessment	B.H. Erasmus
Environmental Management Plan	B.H. Erasmus
Project management	Jubilee Survey
Town Planning	C. van der Westhuizen + MVD Kalahari (Town Planning)
Engineering Planning	G. Combrink
Project manager	Koplan Consultants CC.
Surveyor	C. Fraenkel

5.2

ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE

An organisational structure is presented in Figure 3. The structure illustrates the lines of communication and responsibility during the construction works.

1. Project manager - IMPLEMENTING/SUPERVISION AND IMPLEMENTING AGENT

The Project Manager/Implementing agent will have overall responsibility for ensuring that the provisions of the EMP are implemented. They will be assisted in this task by the Environmental Control Officer (ECO).

II. ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL OFFICER (ECO)

The ECO will report to Sol Plaatje Municipality or to an agent appointed by the Municipality that will be responsible for the implementation of the EMP, and dealing with any matters that cannot be resolved between the ECO and Project Manager/Implementing agent.

The ECO's duties will include:

- Obtaining, examining and approving method statements supplied by individual contractors or sub-contractors;
- Attendance of site meetings if deemed necessary by the ECO or Sol Plaatje Municipality or its appointed agent.
- Advising the Project Manager/Implementing agent and contractors on environmental issues within the defined work areas;
- Assisting in finding environmentally acceptable solutions to development and construction problems;
- Inspecting the site at a frequency determined by the stage of the project to establish compliance with environmental provisions;
- Reviewing the site logbook with regard to records of site activities that may pertain to the environment;
- Recommending corrective action to the Project Manager/Implementing agent where construction activities are not in compliance with the EMP
- Keeping diligent records of communication with the Project Manager/Implementing agent and the Sol Plaatje Municipality or its agent, and
- Run induction courses on environmental awareness for contractors' staff and supervisors appointed by Sol Plaatje Municipality.
- Supply help, advice and/or negotiate around issues pertaining to environmental issues on the project.
- Liaise with registered Interested and Affected Parties during especially the construction phase of the project. After the construction phase their negotiations should revert to the developer and concessionaire if applicable.

Section Six

Environmental Awareness Meeting

The National Environmental Management Act, 107 of 1998 states that any costs incurred to remedy environmental damage must be borne by the person responsible for that damage. It is therefore imperative that the Contractor reads through and understands the requirements of this document and any proceeding documents pertaining to environmental requirements (where applicable) before construction commences.

The National Environmental Act, 107 of 1998 states that everyone is required to take reasonable measures to ensure that they do not pollute the environment. Reasonable measures include informing and educating employees about the environmental risks of their work and training them to operate in an environmentally acceptable manner. In terms of this:

- The contractors must meet with the ECO to discuss the environmental requirements;

- The contractors, in conjunction with the ECO, must meet with the construction workers to explain the environmental requirements of the Environmental Management Plan;

- Environmental awareness posters will be provided, and the Contractors must ensure that these are displayed at the construction camp and site to visually depict the environmental "do's and don'ts". The posters will use pictures to convey the intended message and any explanatory text will be in Afrikaans and English;

- A register must be kept of all employees attending the environmental awareness meeting/s

Section Seven

Required procedures for Construction

7.1 ESTABLISHMENT OF ACCESS ROADS

Some additional roads will be constructed as access roads to the area as no roads presently exist. These roads must be constructed where roads are intended as per layout plan.

7.2 SITE ESTABLISHMENT

I. LOCATION OF CONTRACTORS' CAMP

The contractors' camp is classified as the demarcated area where the contractor will establish offices, workshops, living quarters (where applicable), storage facilities and forms a discrete part of the construction site.

The contractors' camp and site areas must be defined using stakes and gum poles, and activities must be confined within this area. Extension or movement of the construction camp must be agreed by the ECO. In choosing a site for the camp:

- Choose as level an area as possible;
- Keep away from watercourses; and
- If possible, the camp must be located within the construction site area.

If possible, the construction camp and site must only have one access route, which should be maintained in an adequate condition so as to minimise dust and erosion. Where possible, existing roads and tracks must be used, and upgraded to cope with the heavy construction plant. The Project Manager/Implementing agent and ECO must recommend and approve the location of any contractor's camp prior to its establishment.

II. SITE FACILITIES REQUIRED

The contractors must provide, maintain and remove such hoarding screens, and other materials required to effectively uphold and protect the works, materials and property from damage, whether by the employer or other owners, and secure the safety and freedom from injury to all persons on site.

III. STORAGE FACILITY AND WORKING AREA

A lockable, mobile structure must be erected on a bunded surface (concrete slab) for storing materials, equipment, chemicals, etc.

IV. SITE ENCAMPMENT

The contractors are not permitted to erect a temporary construction camp for the housing of labourers adjacent to, or on the site of the works.

The only contracting staff permitted to remain on site after hours and on weekends will be those formally employed by the contractors to provide security and watching services, unless work continues over weekends. A facility will be provided for this purpose and strictly controlled to prevent abuse.

TEMPORARY OFFICES

The contractors must provide, erect, maintain and remove on completion of the contract, ample temporary offices and sheds for the proper storage of perishable materials and for the use of workmen.

VI. SANITARY FACILITIES

An adequate number of self-contained chemical toilets must be established on site, which must be easily accessible to construction workers. The contractors must supply toilet paper at all toilets, and will be responsible for its maintenance and servicing.

Contractors must ensure that no spillage occurs when chemical toilets are cleaned, and that the contents are properly stored and removed off-site. A contingency plan for spills from toilets must be supplied by the contractors and approved by the Project Manager/Implementing agent and ECO.

Toilets must be placed outside areas susceptible to standing or flowing water, and siting must be done in consultation with the Project Manager/Implementing agent and ECO.

Performing ablutions outside toilet is strictly prohibited.

7.3 DEMOLITION OF EXISTING STRUCTURES

Existing structures (shacks) will be removed by their residents on moving to their allocated permanent houses.

7.4 SITE CLEARING

I. CLEARING OF VEGETATION

No prescription in connection with vegetation clearing can be issued as almost all of the natural vegetation has already been removed. No protected or endangered species occur on site.

II. SOIL STRIPPING

Where applicable, soil will be removed where excavations will be made for foundations. This soil may be used in landscaping, building or discarded.

7.5 CUT AND FILL BULK EARTHWORKS

I. SOIL HANDLING

The handling of wet soil where the clay content is 15% must be avoided, as this causes compaction. Similarly, the repeated handling of soil must also be avoided, as this may result in the loss of soil structure.

In order to avoid spillage and loss through wind, trucks must not be overloaded when transporting soils to and from the site.

II. SOIL STOCKPILE MANAGEMENT

The contractor responsible for stockpiling (where applicable) must remove the topsoil during site clearance for re-use in the final landscaping of the site. The Project manager/Implementing agent and ECO must identify a suitable site for stockpiling that is:

- Removed from the working area;
- In a sheltered position so that the soil will not be exposed to the effects of erosion;
- Removed from drainage lines to minimize the risk of being washed away;
- Removed from areas of indigenous vegetation; and
- Removed from the base of a bank so that run-off from the top of the bank does not cause ponding of water along the stockpile.

Stockpiles must be neat, must not exceed 3 m in height, and must be convex at the top to promote run-off. For stockpiling of less than one month, temporary erosion measures must be implemented by means of a secured cover of hessian.

III. POTENTIAL DISCOVERY OF SITES WITH ARCHAEOLOGICAL SIGNIFICANCE

Any archaeological or historical sites uncovered during construction must be reported to SAHRA and/or the Archaeology Department of the McGregor Museum, Kimberley immediately. No site of archaeological or historical significance may be moved without a permit from SAHRA. Any permitted removal of archaeological or historical matter must be done under the strict supervision of a qualified archaeologist or historian.

IV. DRILLING AND BLASTING

If blasting is required, it is the sole responsibility of the Contractors to obtain a blasting permit and abide by all the conditions of the Explosive Act and the Inspector of Explosives.

Blasting will only be permitted at such times as agreed by the Project Manager/Implementing agent and ECO, in consultation with the Contractor, and must preferably occur at the same time each day. Charge sizes must be set so as to ensure that no damage is caused to surrounding areas. The contractors must allow for good vibration monitoring equipment on site at all times during blasting operation and record keeping during blasting operations is of vital importance. During overcast and cloudy days, the ECO must advise whether or not blasting can take place.

1. PRE-BLASTING NOTIFICATION SURVEYS

Before doing any blasting, the relevant occupants/owners of surrounding land must be notified, and any concerns addressed. This may be done through a community meeting, distribution of leaflets and/or placing notifications in the local media. Buildings within the potential damaging zone of the blast must be surveyed preferably with the owner present, and any cracks or latent defects pointed out and recorded either using photographs or video.

7.6 ESTABLISHMENT OF INFRA STRUCTURAL SERVICES

I. TRENCHING RECORDS

Any trenching required for the provision of services to the site must be done in an environmentally sensitive manner. Service routes must be agreed by the ECO using the following criteria:

- Trenching will be kept to a minimum through the use of single trenches for different services.
- The planning and selection of trench routes will be undertaken in liaison with the ECO and cognisance must be given to minimize the potential for soil erosion, disturbance of indigenous vegetation, the pit-trapping of mammals, reptiles, amphibians, insects, etc.

Trench routes with permitted working areas will be clearly defined and marked beforehand with clear indicators.

- The stripping and separation of topsoil will occur where the ECO recommends and considers that there is a clearly defined topsoil layer, and it would be a worthwhile exercise. Soil will be excavated and used for re-filling trenches using the rollover method, i.e. soil from the first trench section will be stockpiled on the main stockpile site. Thereafter, soil excavated from subsequent trench lengths will be used to backfill the trench behind it once the services have been laid. The final trench length will be re-filled using the soil stockpiled from the first length.

Trench lengths must be kept as short as practically possible.

- Trenches must be re-filled to flush with (or slightly higher to allow for settlement) the surrounding land surface to minimize erosion. Excess soil will be stockpiled in an appropriate manner.

Under direction from the ECO, immediately after re-filling, trenches and disturbed working areas must be planted with a suitable plant species and watered where practicable.

- Trenches must be sensitive to possible visual impact, especially if overhead services are required.

7.7 BUILDING ACTIVITIES

I. CONCRETE MIXING

Mixing should be confirmed to an impervious and contained area, and excess waste concrete should be disposed of at a licensed landfill site.

II. CONSTRUCTION OF BUILDINGS

Construction materials must be sourced from a sustainable resource.

7.8 ROAD WORKS AND PARKING AREAS

I. CREATION OF PLATFORMS

Platforms must be stabilised, and the area inspected and repaired regularly. Platforms must be stabilised (using a chemical stabilizer where applicable) to minimise erosion, and the area must be monitored once every two weeks to check whether another application is necessary.

7.9 SITE CLEAN-UP AND REHABILITATION

The contractor(s) must ensure that all structures, equipment, materials and facilities used for construction activities are removed upon completion of the project. The contractors must clear and clean the construction site to the satisfaction of the Project Manager/Implementing agent and ECO upon completion of the project.

Landscaping will comprise mainly grassed areas and indigenous trees and shrubs. The ECO must approve a plant species list prior to the commencement of landscaping activities.

Section Eight

General Procedures for all Construction Activities

8.1 METHOD STATEMENTS

The ECO must provide a proforma for method statements, for which the contractors must provide written statements for discussion between themselves, the ECO and the Project manager/implementing agent.

Method statements must provide details of procedures, materials to be used, timing and sketches of the proposed work method or design (where applicable). Work will not commence until the method statement has been approved by the ECO, and failure to submit these will result that the ECO recommend to the Project Manager/implementing agent that part or all of the works be suspended until such time as the method statement has been received and approved.

At the end of each week, the contractors must brief the ECO on work that will be undertaken during the following week.

8.2 DUST CONTROL

Excavation, handling and transport of erodible materials must be avoided under high wind conditions or when a visible dust plain is present. During high wind conditions, the ECO will evaluate the situation and make a decision on whether dust-damping measures are required, or whether working should cease altogether until the wind speed drops to an acceptable level.

Soil stockpiles must be located in sheltered areas where they are not exposed to the erosive effects of the wind. In addition, vehicle speeds must not exceed 40 km/h along dust roads or 20 km/h when traversing unconsolidated and non-vegetated areas.

Appropriate dust suppression measures must be used when dust generation is unavoidable, e.g. dampening with water, particularly during prolonged periods of dry weather. Such measures will also include the use of temporary stabilising measures (e.g. chemical soil binders).

8.3 NOISE CONTROL

Working hours must conform to local By-laws. Any departure from these should be done in consultation with the local authorities. In this case the AP's may make certain suggestions that will have to be negotiated with them. In general, noise levels from construction activities must not increase ambient noise levels by more than 7 dB. Noise impacts can possibly be reduced by implementing the following recommendations:

- Contractors will not be allowed to use sound amplification equipment on-site, unless in emergency situations;
 - All equipment must be regularly and systematically checked, maintained and repaired (especially exhaust systems) as poorly maintained vehicles can generate disturbing and unnecessary noise; and
 - Construction workers must be made aware of not creating unnecessary noise such as hooting and shouting.
- The ECO must ensure that he/she is kept fully informed of any complaints received regarding noise levels from neighbouring properties.

8.4 FUEL AND HAZARDOUS MATERIAL STORAGE

I. INVENTORY OF SUBSTANCES

The contractors must identify fuels and hazardous substances to be stored on the site, and must be ensure that they know the effects of these substances on their staff and the environment. A copy of the fuels and hazardous substance inventory must be supplied to the ECO.

II. GENERAL PRECAUTIONS

Contractors must ensure that the quantities of fuel and chemicals on site are appropriate to the requirements, and are stored and handled so as to minimise the risk of spillage.

All fuels, oils and chemicals must be confined to specific and secured areas, approved by the ECO. These materials must be stored in an area with concrete or other impervious base, which is adequately bunded. The volume of the bund must be one and the half times the volume of the stored chemicals, and any generators used on the site must also be placed on a bunded surface.

Polluted storm water run-off from the concrete storage area(s) shall be collected, stored (if necessary) and disposed of at an approved waste site. Contaminated soil must also be removed, stored in a skip and disposed of at an approved dumpsite.

III. FUELS

All liquid fuels (e.g. diesel, petrol) stored in tanks or drums must have a brickwork bund wall around the tanks, which will prevent the escape of the materials, should a spill or leak occur. The volume of the bund

must be 1.5 times the volume of the storage tanks. A tank used regularly for re-fuelling vehicles must be located within the bounded area while not in use.

Liquid fuel stores must be located on an area of existing hardstanding, which will provide a barrier to the underlying ground in the event of spills. The tank(s) must be located in an area, which is easily accessible to vehicles. Re-fuelling of vehicles must only take place at these areas, unless otherwise agreed with the ECO.

The Contractors will be responsible for ensuring that any party delivering fuels or chemicals to the site are aware of the appropriate storage/drop-off locations.

IV. EQUIPMENT/MACHINERY

The contractors must stand any equipment that may leak on watertight drip trays to catch any pollutants. The drip trays must be of a size that the equipment can be placed inside it.

Drip trays must be cleaned regularly, and should not be allowed to overflow. Materials collected in these drip trays must be collected and disposed of off-site at an approved waste disposal site.

8.5 REFUSE AND DISPOSAL

Contractors must supply refuse bins and ensure that their employees deposit all refuse in bins, and these must be emptied on a regular basis to prevent overflowing. Refuse bins must be watertight, wind-proof and scavenger-proof, and must be placed at regular intervals throughout the site. The Project Manager/Implementing agent and ECO must approve the design of the bins. Refuse collected from the site must be stored in an appropriate closed and weatherproof container, and removed on a regular basis as agreed with the Project Manager/Implementing agent and ECO.

Where feasible, refuse must be separated into suitable categories and re-cycled. Construction debris such as scrap metal must be disposed of in a skip container, and disposed of at an approved dumpsite. Refuse may not be burnt or buried on the site, or in the vicinity.

Contractors must identify a permitted refuse disposal site for various categories of waste and provide documentary proof to the Project Manager/Implementing agent of the type and volume of waste disposed there.

The contractors must supply workers to clean up on a daily basis, and general cleanliness of the site must form part of the site inspections undertaken by the ECO.

- 8.6 DEMARCATION OF EATING AREAS**
- Eating areas will be restricted to the site offices and contractors' camp. If employees are to eat elsewhere on the site, the contractors must, in consultation with the ECO, designate places for eating in working areas, and must provide adequate refuse bins at all these places, which must be cleaned on a daily basis.
- The Project Manager/Implementing agent will regulate the establishment of informal food stalls.
- 8.7 PROVISION OF WATER**
- The Contractors will be responsible for providing construction water, water required for dust control, drinking and washing water. They are also responsible for providing washing facilities for all staff.
- Wastewater from washing facilities must be discharged into a sewage system, or removed from the site by the contractors or other means, should the existing services be unavailable.
- 8.8 ELECTRICAL POWER**
- The contractors must make their own arrangements for electrical power requirements until such time that electricity is available on site.
- 8.9 STORM WATER CONTROL**
- The contractors must take reasonable measures to prevent erosion from resulting from a diversion, restriction or increase in the flow of storm water caused by the presence of their own works, operations and activities, all to the satisfaction of the ECO.
- Any storm water collected in banded areas containing oils, fuels, chemicals or other potentially polluting substances must be pumped out of the bund, collected in a suitable container and removed from the site for appropriate disposal.
- 8.10 DISCHARGE OF SURFACE WATER**
- Berms and existing storm water drainage systems must be used to prevent surface run-off from entering the excavations.
- 8.11 CLEANLINESS OF PUBLIC ROADS**
- The contractors must ensure that construction vehicles are not overloaded, and as a result do not spill or drop construction/demolition (sand, cement, debris, etc.) onto public roads. Contractors must provide a wash system for

cleaning the wheels of vehicles moving off-site, and must ensure that this is implemented as required.

8.12 TRAFFIC CONTROL AND SAFETY

Traffic control and safety must be done in accordance with the South African Traffic Safety Manual with the relevant signs, flag-men, barriers, etc. being approved at the various accesses. Traffic control must be done in co-operation with local traffic officials.

8.13 EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

I. FIRE EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

The contractors must identify the authorities responsible for fighting fires in the area, and must liaise with them regarding procedures in the event of a fire. Contractors must also ensure that all necessary telephone numbers, etc. are posted at conspicuous and relevant locations in the event of an emergency.

The contractors must advise the relevant authority of a fire as soon as one starts and must not wait until it can no longer be controlled. Contractors must ensure that their staff is aware of the procedure to be followed in the event of a fire, and fire-fighting equipment must be ready and easily available at all times.

The contractors are liable for the costs incurred for organisations called out to extinguish any fires started by their own activities or any of their site staff, as well as for any costs incurred to re-instate burnt areas as deemed necessary by the ECO and authorities.

II. FIRST AID

The contractors must provide and maintain a suitable first aid kit on the site, and will ensure that a qualified person in first-aid is present during working hours, in accordance with the Occupational Health and Safety Act. They will also ensure that their staff know and can carry out the procedures for dealing with accidents, and must clearly define the emergency procedures to be followed for obtaining medical treatment and assistance to in the event of serious injury.

III. SPILLS OF FUELS AND HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES

The contractors must keep the necessary materials and equipment on site to deal with ground spills of any hazardous materials present. They have to set up a procedure for dealing with spills, which must be approved by the ECO and Project Manager/Implementing agent, and

must include a provision to notify the Project Manager/Implementing agent of any spills.

The clean up of spills and any damage caused by a spill must be for the contractors' accounts.

IV. EMERGENCY ADVISORY PROCEDURE

The contractors must ensure that there is an emergency advisory procedure on site before commencing any operations that may endanger the lives of their staff, the Project Manager/Implementing agent staff and the ECO, or cause damage to the environment.

Contractors must also ensure that their staff, the Project Manager/Implementing agent and the ECO are familiar with all emergency procedures to be followed. It must be ensured that lists of all emergency numbers/contact people are regularly updated, and that numbers and names are at relevant locations at all times.

8.14 FIRE PRECAUTIONS

I. COOKING/HEATING

No open fires or naked flames for heating or cooking will be allowed on the site. If the necessity arises that construction workers want to make fires for cooking and/or heating purposes, designated areas will be permitted in consultation with the ECO.

Cookers and heaters must be to the satisfaction of the ECO.

II. SMOKING

Smoking will be permitted on the site at the discretion of the Project Manager/Implementing agent, and the contractors must ensure that all personnel are aware of the risk and the need to extinguish cigarettes before disposal.

III. WELDING/CUTTING

Wherever work involves welding, gas cutting or cutting of metal, fire-fighting equipment must be immediately available.

IV. FIRE-FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

The contractors must appoint a member of their staff to be responsible for the installation and inspection of fire extinguishers. The ECO must receive copies of the inspection reports.

A map must clearly be drawn up to indicate the locations of fire extinguishers, and they must be clearly visible.

The contractors must also supply site offices, kitchen areas, workshop areas, stores of fuel and hazardous materials, and any other areas identified by the ECO with fire extinguishers.

8.15 SECURITY

I. SECURITY CARDS

Employees must perform to the company requirements in respect of wearing and/or displaying security cards.

II. WEAPONS AND DANGEROUS ARTICLES

No employees will be allowed to carry or bring onto the premises, any dangerous or lethal weapon, article or substance without specific instructions or prior permission to do so.

III. SAFETY ON SITE

PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

HARD HATS

The following personnel are required to wear hard hats:

- All personnel entering the site;
- All persons within 10 m of any situation where any form of lifting or hoisting equipment is being used; and
- Any personnel working in any other situation where the possibility of head injuries is present.

PROTECTIVE GLOVES

Protective gloves are to be worn by all persons engaging in the following:

- Handling of heavy materials;
- Carrying out maintenance activities within a crusher; and
- Persons engaged in welding or gas cutting activities.

Soi Plaatje Municipality and/or its appointed agent will ensure that Interested and Affected parties are kept constantly informed of the development by the means of regular correspondence and/or communication.

8.17 ON-GOING PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

Preference should be given to employing local contractors. Contractors are to give preference to employing local unskilled labourers.

8.16 EMPLOYMENT

- All heavy equipment operators must make use of safety seatbelts, where provided.
- Safety harnesses must be worn when carrying out work 2 m above ground level, unless it is being carried out from a safe and protected work platform; and

SAFETY BELTS

- Any person entering into high noise areas (>85 decibels).
 - All crushing operators; and
 - All persons engaged in rock drilling activities (>85 decibels).
- The following persons are required to wear ear protection:

HEARING PROTECTION

- Persons engaged in grinding activities.
 - Persons engaged in cutting or welding activities; and
 - Persons operating equipment under dusty conditions;
- The following persons must wear safety goggles at all times:

SAFETY GOGGLES

- All persons entering the site or workshop area must wear approved safety shoes or safety boots.

SAFETY FOOTWEAR

Section Nine

Procedures for Monitoring, Records and Corrective Action

9.1 MONITORING

It is important that monitoring is undertaken so that:

- Compliance with EMP specifications can be demonstrated; and
- Problems or issues of non-conformance can be identified and appropriate corrective action taken to minimize the impact.

Monitoring will comprise:

- Visual checks of the site activities by Project Manager/implementing agent on a daily basis;
- Visual checks of the site activities by the ECO. It is anticipated that the ECO will visit the site once or twice a week for the first four weeks of the site works, and once a week for the remainder of the construction period. Where a particular aspect requires more detailed monitoring, more frequent visits will be made; and

- Review of records and documentation (e.g. waste transfer documentation) to reconcile these with the log of daily site activities.

9.2 RECORDS

The following records will be maintained during the project to enable demonstration of compliance with the EMP specifications:

Project Manager/implementing agent-LOG OF DAILY ACTIVITIES

The Project Manager/implementing agent must maintain a daily log of activities. It is recommended that the log be completed using additional headings as follows:

- Waste - obtain from the Contractor documentary proof of type, volume, waste disposal site and Transport Contractor.
- Fuels and chemicals - list deliveries, spills; and
- Other environmental issues, e.g. adverse weather (wind), spills and water supply run-off from excavations.

II. ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL OFFICER (ECO) - ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES

An ECO will be appointed to assist the Project Manager/Implementing agent with implementation of the EMP. Sol Plaatje Municipality and/or its agent will undertake the overall auditing of the implementation of the EMP. The ECO will maintain records of:

- Issues arising on site;
 - Minutes of meetings attended;
 - Method statements received and approved;
 - Cases of non-conformance with the EMP;
 - Corrective action; and
 - All communications with the Project Manager/Implementing agent and the Sol Plaatje Municipality.
- Observations made during the site visits will be recorded and photographs taken to demonstrate both compliance and non-compliance with the specifications in the EMP.

9.3 NON-CONFORMANCE AND CORRECTIVE ACTION

Issues of non-conformance noted by the ECO will be communicated to the Project Manager/Implementing agent, who will be responsible for ensuring that the relevant parties are informed of the non-conformance and that appropriate corrective action is taken. The ECO will advise on the appropriate corrective actions where necessary.

Environmental issues will be addressed at regular site meetings between the ECO and the Project Manager/Implementing agent. The ECO will present verbal reports from their logbooks of any environmental concerns or issues that have arisen, and corrective actions that have been taken. Outstanding corrective actions will be discussed and agreed at these meetings. Issues relating to complaints or comments received from the public will also be discussed at these meetings.

Minutes of the meetings will be prepared by the Project Manager/Implementing agent and copied to all attendees before the next meeting. The frequency of the site meetings will be agreed by the ECO, Project Manager/Implementing agent, the Contractors and other relevant parties prior to the commencement of the project.

Section Ten

Internal Review

Internal review of the EMP will take place on an on-going basis by the ECO. Based on observations during site inspections and issues raised at the site meetings, the ECO shall determine whether any procedures require modification in order to improve the efficiency of the EMP. Any changes or adjustments to the EMP shall be registered in the records of the ECO. Therefore, adjustment and update of the original EMP document is not required when these *ad hoc* changes are made. The ECO's records shall be available to the relevant authority, Department of Environmental Affairs, throughout the process and copies will be provided on request.

At the conclusion of the project an Environmental Construction Report will be compiled and submitted to the client. The report will be compiled by the local ECO in collaboration with Sol Plaatje Municipality and/or its agent. It will outline the implementation of the EMP, and highlight any problems and issues that arose during the construction period.

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1: A map showing the locality of the present informal Lerato Park and the entire area of the upgraded Lerato Park.

Figure 2: The layout design for the upgraded Lerato Park.

Figure 3: Organogram showing the chain of command in accordance with the EMP.

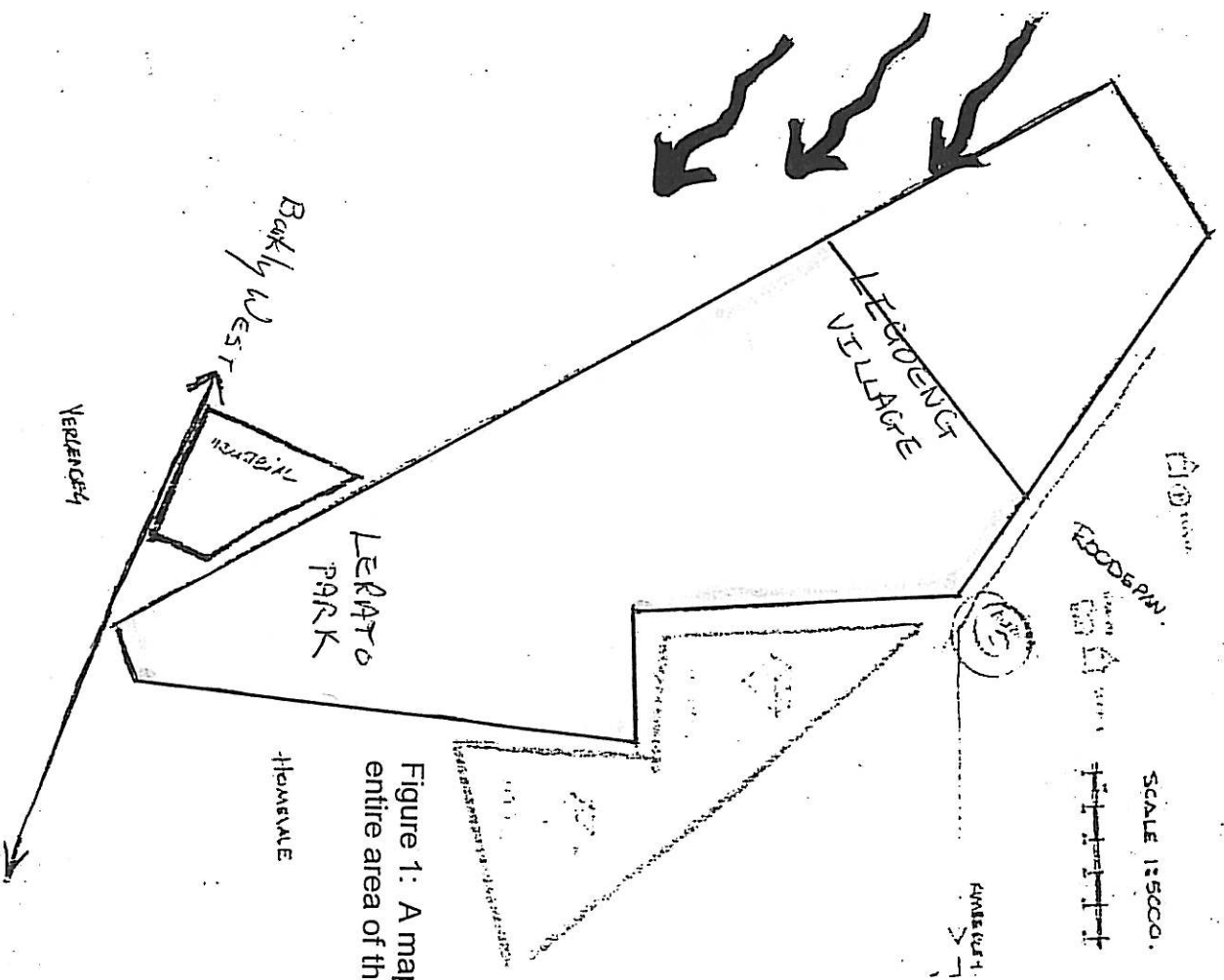
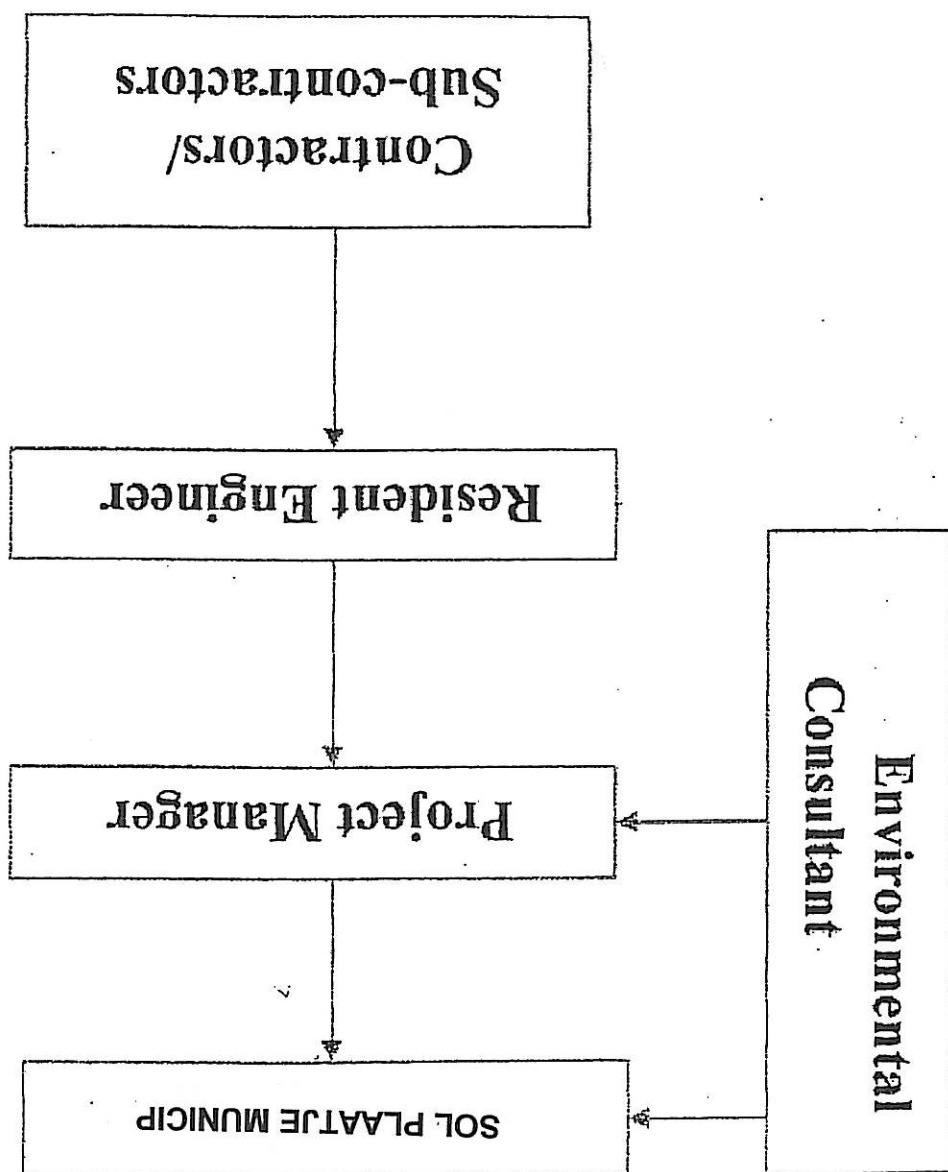


Figure 1: A map showing the locality of the present informal Lerato Park and the entire area of the upgraded Lerato Park.

Figure 3: Organogram showing the chain of command in accordance with the EMP.



*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

PORTION 2: CONTRACT

**Part C4
Site Information**

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

SITE INFORMATION

INDEX

Section	Description	Page No
PORTION 2:	CONTRACT	
PART C4	SITE INFORMATION.....	C4-2
C4.1	Description of Site	C4-2
C4.2	Geotechnical Report.....	C4-2

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

**THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN HOUSES
IN LERATO PARK**

SITE INFORMATION

C4.1 Description of Site

GPS coordinates: 28°40'35.34"S and 24°42'46.74"E.

As per locality plan and layout plan, and volume 2 (Stand Numbers)

C4.2 Nature of ground and subsoil conditions

According to published information the site is underlain by shale of the Prince Albert Formation, Ecca Group, Karoo Supergroup. The shale has been extensively intruded by post Karoo dolerite, especially along the southern portions of the study area.

Messer's Southern Geotechnical Engineering in their findings of the geotechnical investigations conducted of the proposed development site, (Refer Annexure A), found that the site can be divided into two broad geological zones namely:

- Areas underlain by shallow, very soft rock shale and minor mudstone and,
- Areas underlain by shallow, soft rock or harder dolerite rock.

The majority of the study area is covered by a thin, surface layer of potentially expansive, transported soils. Within areas underlain by very soft rock shale or mudstone at depth, the transported soils are underlain by calcareous, residual shale or mudstone. Calcareous residual shale/mudstone soils are in turn typically underlain by highly weathered, very highly fractured, soft rock or harder shale.

For additional information, refer to the Geotechnical report (Attached).

END OF SECTION

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2

*Northern Cape Department of Co-operative Governance, Human
Settlement and Traditional Affairs*

LERATO PARK INTEGRATED HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

TENDER NUMBER: NC/17/2026

*THE CONSTRUCTION OF TWELVE (12) MILITARY VETERAN
HOUSES IN LERATO PARK*

VOLUME 2: Drawings

--	--	--	--	--	--

Contractor

Witness 1

Witness 2

Employer

Witness 1

Witness 2